CONVERSATIONAL HINDI

A Microwave Approach

N.D. KRISHNAMURTHY M.A., B.ED.,

A Proud Presentation From :

NDK INSTITUTE OF LANGUAGES

707, 41st Cross, V Block, Jayanagar,
Bangalore - 560 041. INDIA
☎ : 91-80-26636432

First Edition : January 2003
Second Edition : January 2006
Third Edition : December 2008
4th Edition : March 2009

© *All rights reserved*

Price : Rs. 300/-
U.S. : $ 20,
£ 15

Published by :
NDK INSTITUTE OF LANGUAGES,
"Mamata", 707, 41st Cross, V Block,
Jayanagar, Bangalore-560 041. (INDIA)
Phone : 91-080-26636432

PREFACE

This book is designed for non-Hindi speaking people and foreigners to begin the study of Hindi. Hindi is the major language of India and is the language of Madhya Pradesh, Uttara Pradesh, Rajasthan, Bihar, Chattiisgadh, Jarkhand, Himachal Pradesh & Haryana and part of Punjab. In addition it is also spoken in Mauritius, South Africa, Fiji, Malaysia and Surinam by a good number of people. In 20th Century several universities in Europe and U.S.A. have introduced Hindi.

In India apart from the Hindi spoken above mentioned states, it is spoken and understood by a good percentage of non Hindi area population also. All the states in South India, Maharashtra and other eastern states 50% of Indian population understand & communicate in a limited way. Hindi belongs to Indo-European family of languages. In India it belongs to Indo-Aryan Group of Languages. Other major languages in this group are, Assamese, Bengali Oriya, Marathi, Gujarathi, Punjabi, Kashmiri & Sindhi.

In mid 20th Century almost all the countries in the world have realised that absolutely independent country will be a misnomer and a myth and inter-dependence will be the order of the day. Unless exchanges interactions and communications among different nations of the world take place, no language can develop. These inter actions are perpetual. Because of mass exodus greatness of Indian Culture, Trade,

Crave for Knowledge about other countries have all put India into the world as important segment. Consequently the major language of the country Hindi has gained pivotal importance. This book is intended to facilitate foreign scholars, researchers, tradesmen, socialogists and others who are interested in exploring.

Dr. U.P. Upadhyaya

AUTHOR'S NOTE

This book's contents are scientifically designed, productively selected, systematically arranged and grammatically analysed in a graduated sequence. This is necessiated because language is not just sound, diction silent signs or voiceless or signs. It is a compendium of all these plus associated verbal and nonverbal actions which has a direct bearing on the culture of the spoken community. This represents syntactic, phonological & morphological models. New language or second language learning at a time when the First language habits are involuntarily deep rooted will pose several impediments and gives new experience.

The contents of this book is linguistically and culturally made authentic. This is a core material for the general purpose. Individual needs may be different. There is ample scope in the material to substitute for individual & different group needs. Need based teaching learning process of any language (II language) with change of time limits us to core materials only. An earnest attempt has been made to include most of grammatical points.

Environment of learners do need and teaching facilities to be taken into consideration while determining the course content. This material has been tried on several multinationals and particularly among American Peace Corps volunteers and the results were excellent. We are grateful to American Peace Corps

volunteers & staff for having co-operated in successfully administering this project, we are also thankful to Dr U.P. Upadhyaya. Our thanks are also due to the printer Sri C.R. Janardhan, Proprietor, Sri Venkateshwara Press, Bangalore.

We are also grateful to Sri H.V. Ramachandra Rao, retired Station Director, All India Radio & Doordarshan for having undertaken this maiden venture on turnkey basis. We are grateful to Prof. N. Nagappa & Dr. U.P. Upadhyaya for guiding in preparing the preface.

We are also grateful to Smt. Latha Vishwanath who has helped us in preparing DTP of the book flawlessly.

N.D. Krishna Murthy

Detailed phonetic description (see appendix.)

CONTENTS OF MATERIAL

Cycles	:	A Small unit of material with one or two structures serving as focus.
Topical Focus	:	The General Theme of a Cycle
Grammatical Focus	:	Specific structures & its grammatical elements included in the cycle.
Rituals	:	Bits of expression of very high frequency use which may not represent an important structure in graduated sequence.
Interrogatives	:	Question words in the early cycles which allow the learner opportunity for self-discovery.
Model Sentence M. Phase	:	Four to eight sentences illustrating major grammatical models of the language and of each cycle. They are arranged in order of declarative (or responsive) sentences followed by paired interrogative sentences.
Conversation (C. Phase)	:	Fragments of Converstaional exchanges which place sentences in the M Phase in realistic context.
Vocabulary	:	All new words presented in each cycle.
Teacher's Notes	:	Guidance for the teachers to

substitute new vocabulary in the cycle & give opportunity for the learners to drill.

Learner's Notes : Instructions to use the rituals or little pieces of linguistic or cultural information which are not very important to be included in the grammatical notes.

Grammatical Notes : Statements of descreptions of the formal all language and the functions of the form.

Supplements : Specially created material for sound drill which links previous cycle and reviews various kinds of Pattern Drills.

Last couple of cycles are self discovery units.

HINDI SOUNDS

System of Transliteration
Nearest English Equivolent

Hindi Symbol Grapheme	English	Nearest English equivolent
अ	a	of up
आ	aa	of calm
इ	i	of bit
ई	ii	of keep
उ	u	of put
ऊ	uu	of shoot
ऋ	r	--
ए	ee	of mate
ऐ	ai	of why
ae	a	of ban
ओ	oa	of coat
औ	au	of how
अं	am	of ambulance
अः	aha	–
क	k	of skin
ग	g	of get
ङ	ṅ	of sing
च	c	of church
ज	j	of jet
झ	jh	
ञ	ñ	of bench

ट	ṭ	of heart
ड	ḍ	of card
ढ	ḍh	
ण	ṇ	with tongue tip curled and touching roof of the mouth
त	t	of birth
थ	th	
द	d	of though
ध	dh	
न	n	of ten
प	p	of copy
फ़	f/ph	of fan
ब,भ	b	of ban
म	m	of man
य	y	of yard
र	r	of tree
ल	L	of light
व	v	of very
श	śa	of shake
ष	ṣ	of fish
स	s/a	of motion
ह	h	of head, this
ं	~	(semi Nasal sound)

k,g, c, j, ṭ, ḍ, t d p & b followed by h are pronounced with greater breath force (aspirated) for

Contents

Preface ------- v

Author's Note ------- vii

System of Transliteration ------- xi

UNIT 1

Cycle 1 ------- 3

Cycle 2 ------- 9

Cycle 3 ------- 15

Cycle 4 ------- 21

Cycle 5 ------- 25

Cycle 6 ------- 31

Cycle 7 ------- 37

Cycle 8 ------- 43

Cycle 9 ------- 49

Cycle 10 ------- 57

UNIT 2

Cycle 11 ------- 65

Cycle 12 ------- 73

Cycle 13 ------- 79

Cycle 14 ------- 85

Cycle 15 ------- 91

Cycle 16 ------- 97

Cycle 17 ------- 103

Cycle 18 ------- 109

Cycle 19 ------- 117
Cycle 20 ------- 123
UNIT 3
Cycle 21 ------- 133
Cycle 22 ------- 139
Cycle 23 ------- 145
Cycle 24 ------- 151
Cycle 25 ------- 157
Cycle 26 ------- 163
Cycle 27 ------- 169
Cycle 28 ------- 177
Cycle 29 ------- 185
Cycle 30 ------- 193
UNIT 4
Cycle 31 ------- 203
Cycle 32 ------- 209
Cycle 33 ------- 217
Cycle 34 ------- 225
Cycle 35 ------- 233
Cycle 36 ------- 241
Cycle 37 ------- 247
Cycle 38 ------- 253
Cycle 39 ------- 259
Cycle 40 ------- 267

UNIT 5
Cycle 41 ------- 277
Cycle 42 ------- 279
Cycle 43 ------- 281
Cycle 44 ------- 283
Cycle 45 ------- 285
Cycle 46 ------- 287
Cycle 47 ------- 289
Cycle 48 ------- 293
Cycle 49 ------- 295
Cycle 50 ------- 297
APPENDIX I
Content Analysis ------- 299
APPENDIX II
Hindi Sounds ------- 311

APPENDIX IV
Hindi to English classified Vocabulary ---- 331
Phrases Statements & Questions in Devanagri Script -------- 341

UNIT

1

(CYCLE 1 to 10)

CYCLE - 1

Topical Focus : Greetings, introduction, Name Profession & Nationality

Grammatical Focus : Pronouns I, II, III Persons, nominative & Possessive cases masculine & feminine. Singular honurific singular & Plural.

Interrogative Ritual : Kyaa - What ? Kaun - Who ? Namastee Hello Jii haã - yes sir . madam . Jii nahii No sir / madam.

M 1. *Namastee* - Hello / salutation
M 2. *Namastee* - Hello / Salutation
M 3. *meeraa naam Jaan hai* - My name is John.
M 4. *maĩ vidyaarthii hũũ* - I am a student.
M 5. *maĩ amerikan hũũ* - I am an American.
M 6. *aapkaa naam kyaa hai ?* - What is your name ?
M 7. *aap kaun haĩ ?* - Who are you ?
M 8. *Kyaa aap Vidyaarthii haĩ ?* - Are you a student ?
M 9. *kyaa aap amerikan haĩ ?* - Are you an American?
M10. *aap kaa naam kyaa hai ?* - What is your name ?

C1A	*Namastee*	-	Hello
B	*Namastee*	-	Hello
A	*aap Kaun haĩ ?*	-	Who are you ?
B	*maĩ moohan hũũ*	-	I am Mohan
A	*aap hindustaanii haĩ ?*	-	Are you an Indian ?
B	*Jii haã̃ maĩ hindustanii hũũ*	-	Yes sir/madam I am an Indian
C2A	*Voo kaun hai ?*	-	Who is he ?
B	*Voo Vidyarthii hai.*	-	He is a student.
A	*Kyaa Voo ruusii hai ?*	-	Is he is a Russian ?
B	*nahiĩ voo hindustaanii hai.*	-	No.(He is not a Russian) He is an Indian
A	*Voo kaun hai ?*	-	Who is she ?
B	*Voo Jaapaanii hai.*	-	She is a Japanese.
A	*Voo hindii vidyaarthinii hai*	-	She is a Hindi student.
C4 A	*aapkaa naam kyaa hai?*	-	What is your name ?
B	*meeraa naam Jaan hai.*	-	My name is John.
C	*kyaa aap vakiil haĩ ?*	-	Are you a lawyer ?
D	*nahiĩ maĩ vakiil nahiĩ hũũ maĩ adhyaapak hũũ*	-	No I am not a lawyer, I am a teaher.
A	*uṅkaa naam kyaa hai ?*	-	What is her name ?
B	*uṅkaa naam vimalaa hai*	-	Her name is Vimala.
C5 A	*Voo kyaa hai ?*	-	What is it ?
B	*Voo kitaab hai*	-	That is a book.
A	*kyaa ya aapkii kitaab hai?*	-	It this your book ?
B	*Jii haã̃ ya meerii kitaab hai*	-	yes sir, this is my book.

VOCABULARY

Namaste (Hello) Good morning ya-He she & it (near)

meera	-	my	*Kitaab*	-	Book
naam	-	name	*adhyaapak*	-	Teacher
aapkaa	-	your	*aap*	-	you
Voo	-	He, she & it (far)	*uṅkaa*	-	His her their
maĩ	-	I			

Vidyaarthii student

kyaa - what

Kaun - who

Vakiil - lawyer

hai - is

meeraa - my

TEACHER'S NOTE

In M3 in place of John, substitute other proper nouns.

M4 In M3 in place of maĩ, substitute other proper nouns. like *aap vee, yee, voo, ya*

In place of vidyaarthii substitute other professions like *vakiil, daaktar, iṅjaniyar etc.,*

M5 In place of *'Amerikan'* substitute *aṅgreez ruusii, fraansiisii* etc.,

C2 In place of vidyaarthii substitute adhyaapak Teacher, *dukaandaar Merchant, Kisaan, Farmer etc.,*

C4 In Place of *Kitaab Book* substitute *Kalam pen, ghadii- clock/watch eaṣmaa-glasses* etc.,

LEARNER'S NOTE :

1. 'Namastee' is an all time greeting approximately equivolent to good morning, good afternoon, good day

good evening and goodnight. This greeting is expressed and exchanged when two known persons meet and depart. This utterance is accompanied by folding both hands and bowing the head.

2. The second person aap is both honurific singular and plural masculine & feminine pronoun.

3. There are no articles in Hindi language corresponding to 'a' 'an' & the as in English Language.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

maĩ moohan hũũ I am Mohan

hũũ is the copula verb 'to be form for I Person singular present tense meaning 'am' copula is the last segment in Hindi sentence, 'meeraa'-my is the possessive form maĩ similarly other pronouns also have possessive forms.

maĩ	I	meeraa	my	
aap	you	aapkaa	your	Singular
voo	He/she/it	uskaa	His	Singular
		usskee	Her	Singular
		uskii	Its	Singular
Vee	He,she, they	unkaa	His	Honorific singular & Plural
Vakiil	lawyer	unkee	Her	Honorific singular & Plural
Vidyaarthii	student	unkii	Its	Honorific singular & Plural
Kisaan	Farmer			Femiine & Masculine
dukaandaar	Merchant			Masculine

Possessive case endings have three forms which will be dealt in detail in future cycles.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

Kyaa	*aap*	*moohan*	*haĩ ?*
What	you	Mohan	are ?

Are you Mohan ?

aapkaa	*naam*	*kyaa*	*hai ?*
your	name	what	is ?

What is your name ?

Normally interrogatives form the last segment in Hindi sentence unlike English which come in the beginning. Yes or no type of answer sentence will have question word in the beginning *eg. kyaa aap Vakiil haĩ ? Are you a lawyer ?*

Jii	*haã*	*maĩ*	*adhyaapak hũũ*
Sir/madam	Yes	I	Teacher am

Yes, I am a teacher

Jii nahii	*maĩ*	*vakiill*	*nahii*	*hũũ maĩ*	*vidyaarthii hũũ*
Sir/madam	no	I lawer	no	am I	student am

No sir/Madam I am not a lawyer, I am a student

The pronouns *ya ye* refer to things or persons which are near vo & ve refer to persons & things which are far.

SUPPLEMENT

Observe the short v/s long vowels meaning need not be memorized

jan	men/peopele	jaan	know
man	mind	maan	accept

———o———

CYCLE - 2

Topical Focus : Possession & location

Grammatical Focus : Demonstrative Pronouns & Pronominal Predicates *ya, voo, yee, vee meẽ* in this that they Those at - within these I Person plural *ham, vee,* possessive form

Interrogative Ritual : *aap kaisee haĩ ?*
maĩ ṭhiik hũũ

Kaun who sg.
kaun/kaun who all pl

Possessive interrogative *kiskaa kiskee kiskii*
kiṅkaa kiṅkee kiṅkii
Whose whose whose

Model Sentences :

M 1. *ya meera ghar haĩ* - This is my house.
M 2. *voo aapkii kalam haĩ* - That is your pen.
M 3. *ya hamaaraa kamraa hai* - This is our room.
M 4. *Jaan moohankaa doost haĩ* - John is Mohan's friend.
M 5. *ya kiskaa ghar hai ?* - Whose house is this ?

M 6. *voo kiskii kalam haĩ ?* - Whose Pen is that ?

M 7. *ya kiskaa kamraa haĩ ?* - Whose room is that ?

M 8. *moohan kaa doost kaun hai?*- Who is Mohan's friend?

C A *aapkaa ghar kahãa hai ?* - Where is your house ?

B *meeraa ghar yahãa nahĩi* - My house is not here ?

meera ghar maisuur meẽ hai - my house is in Mysore.

A *bengluur meẽ aapkaa ghar nahĩi hai ?* - Dont you have a house in Bangalore ?

B *meera ghar maisuur meẽ hai* - My house is in Mysore

C2A *voo kyaa hai ?* - What is that ?

B *voo meeri kalam hai* - That is my Pen

A *ya kalam kiskii hai ?* - Whose Pen is this ?

B *ya abdul kii kalam hai* - This is Abdul's Pen.

C3A *voo Kiskaa kamraa hai ?* - Whose room is that ?

B *voo hamaara kamraa hai* - That is our room

A *Ya kamraa kiskaa hai ?* - Whose room is this ?

B *ya moohan aur raaju kaa kamraa hai* - This is Mohan & Raju's room.

A *ya kamraa aapkaa hai ?* - Is this your room ?

B *ya kamraa meera aur meeree doost kaa hai* - This room is mine & my friend's.

C4A *voo laal kalam kiskii hai ?*- Whose is that red pen?

B *voo meerii behin kii hai ?*- That is my sister's (pen)

A *Kaalii kalam kiskii hai ?* - Whose is black pen ?

B *voo meeree bhaaii kii hai* - That is my brother's (pen)?

VOCABULARY

Kahaã	where		
ghar	house		
kalam	pen		
ghadii	watch		
doost	friend		
kamraa	Room		
aur	And		
kiskaa	*kiskee*	*kiskii*	whose singular
kinka	*kinkee*	*kinkii*	whose Plural
meeraa	*meeree*	*meerii*	My
aapkaa	*aapkee*	*aapkii*	your
kahaã			where
yahaã			here
meẽ			in, at, within

TEACHER'S NOTE

a) In M1 In place of meeraa substute other pronouns in possessive forms

M2 In place of Kalam substitute

ghadii	*anguuthii*	*kitaab*
Watch	Ring	Book

M3 In place of kamraa substitute

deẽs	*Jhandaa*	*ballaa*
country	Flag	Bat

M4 In place of 'kiskaa' substitute other pronouns in possessive case

b) Use pictures, and actions to drive home the meanings.

c) make sure ya voo difference is correctly understood by pointing at things near and far.

d) Ask students to converse enquiring about things belonging to different persons.

LEARNER'S NOTE :

1. Note that there are no articles in Hindi Language equivolent to a, an & the as in English.
2. Yee, vee & aap-he, she, they & you are plural forms but used as honorific singular also.
3. When two known people meet they enquire about each other's health by asking "aap kaisee hai ? How are you ? How do you do ? Normal answer to this questions is "*mai thiik hũu* I am fine / ok

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

ya	*meera*	*ghar*	*hai*
This	my	house	is

This is my house

1. Note that verb to 'be' comes at the end where-as in English. It comes immediately after the subject. Note that there is no Preposition in Hindi all are Post Positions only.

ya	*hamaara*	*kamrra*	*hai*
This	our	room	is

This is our room

2. There are only two genders in Hindi masculine & feminue.

3. Possessive case has three ending with 'aa' 'ee' & 'ii'.

ram	*moohan kaa*	*doost*	*hai*
Ram	Mohan's	friend	is

Ram is Mohan's friend.

kaa, kee & kii are possessive case sings. They depend upon the gender & Number of the noun that follows. In this sentence, doost is masculine singular therefore 'hamaaraa doost'

ya	*kalam*	*kiskii*	*hai ?*
This	Pen	whose	is ?

Whose Pen is This ?

In this sentences 'kalam' Pen is feminine so 'kiskii is used for whose.

(Note the Possessive forms of all pronouns.)

ya	*kamraa*	*meeraa*	*aur*	*meeree*	*doostkaa*	*hai*
This	room	mine	&	my	friend's	is

This is mine & my friend's room

1. In the first instance 'meeraa' is used because the following noun 'kamraa' is masculine singular. in second instance meeree is used because after doost there is another case ending 'kaa'.

TEACHER'S NOTE

kalam-pen	mai	meeraa	meeree	meerii
	i	my	my	my
kamraa-room	ham	hamaaraa	hamaaree	hamaarii
doost-friend	we	our	our	our
	voo	uskaa	uskee	uskii
kitaab-Book	He/she/it	his/her/its	his/her/its	his/her/its
adhyaapak	aap	aapkaa	aapkee	aapkii

you	your	your	your
vee/yee	unkaa	unkee	unkii
He/she/they	His/her/their	his/her/their	his/her/their
kaun	kis/kaa/kin	kiskee/kin/kee	kiskii/kinkii
who	whose	whose	whose

SUPPLEMENT

Sounds drill short vs long vowels (practise correct pronuncation. Meaning need not be memorized.

kam	less	kaam	work
ab	now	aab	water
piṭ	get beaten	piṭ	Beat/hit
kul	total	kuul	shore
balaa	trouble	bhalaa	Good

For Phonetic explanations of the sound see section Hindi sounds. Practise the dialogue with your teacher.

———o———

CYCLE - 3

Topical Focus : House hold things

Grammatical Focus : Marked & unmarked Adjectives

Interrogative : *acchaa* well, nice, good

Ritual *kaunsaa* kaunsee

kaunsii which (one)

M 1. *meeraa kurtaa safeed hai-* My shirt is white

M 2. *sarooja sundar ladkii hai -* Saroja is a beautiful girl

M 3. *kannad kitaab mooṭii hai -* Kannada book is thick

M 4. *goopal kaa ghar baḍaa hai-* Gopal's house is big

M 5. *Jaan aur ravi acchee ladkee hai* - John & Ravi are good boys.

M 6. *Kiskaa kurtaa safeed hai?* -Whose shirt is white?

M 7. *sundar ladkii kaun hai ?* - Who is the beautiful girl?

M 8. *kaunsii kitaab mooṭii hai ?*- Which book is thick ?

M 9. *kiskaa ghar baḍaa hai ?* - Whose house is big ?

M10. *Jaan aur ravi kaisee ladkee hai ?* - What kind of boys are Ravi & John ?

C1 **A** *ya kyaa hai ?* - What is this ?
B *ya kurtaa hai* - This is a shirt
A *voo safeed kurtaa kiskaa hai ?* - Whose is that white shirt ?
B *voo safeed kurtaa meera-hai* - That white shirt is mine

C2 **A** *ya kaun hai ?* - Who is this ?
B *iskaa naam kyaa hai ?* - What is her name
A *iskaa naam sarooja hai* - Her name is Saroja
B *Sarooja sundar ladkii hai* - Saroja is a beautiful girl

C3 **A** *voo kitaab kiskii hai ?* - Whose book is that ?
B *ya kitaab meerii hai* - This book is mine.
A *voo mooṭii kitaab kaunsii hai ?* - Which (one) is that thick book ?
B *voo mooṭii kitaab kannaḍ kitaab hai* - That thick book is kannada book

C4 **A** *ya ghar kiskaa hai ?* - Whose house is this ?
B *ya goopaal kaa ghar hai* - This is Gopal's house
A *ya ghar kaisaa hai ?* - How is this house ?
B *ya ghar acchaa hai* - This house is (good) nice

C5 A *yee doo ladkee kaun hai ?* - Who are these two boys ?
B *yee Jaan aur Ravi hai* - They are John & Ravi.
A *yee kaisee ladkee hai ?* - What kind of boys are they ?
B *yee acchee ladkee hai* They are good boys.

ghar		*house*	
kiskaa	whose	*kaisaa*	what
kiskee		*kaisee*	kind of
kiskii		*kaisee*	
kaunsaa	which (one)	*mooṭaa*	thick (Fat)
kaunsee		*mooṭii*	
kaunsii		*mooṭee*	
acchaa	(Good	*doo*	two
sundar	Beautiful	*safeed*	White
ladkii	Girl	*kurtaa*	shirt

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *meeraa* substitute other Pronouns in Possessive forms.

In place of *'kurtaa'* substitute *'ghar'* house *'kaagaz'* paper *kapdaa* cloth.

In place of *safeed* substitute *laal* red *kaalaa* Black *haraa* green

M2 In place of *Sarooja* substitute other *girls' names.*

In place of *sundar* substitute *acchii* good *mooṭii* fat *baḍii* - elder *chhooṭii* younger.

M3 In place of *acchee* substitute *bhalee* good, *samajdaar* learned *hoosiyaar* intelligent

M4 In place of Kannaḍ substitute of other languages

LEARNER'S NOTE :

1. *acchaa* - Good, nice, ok, fine to endorse a statement, to express surpirse, to praise this expression is used.

GRAMMATICAL NOTE :

meera	*kurtaa*	*safeed*	*hai*
my	shirt	white	is

My shirt is white

Sarooja	*sundar*	*ladkii*	*hai*
Sarooja	beautiful	girl	is

Sarooja is a beautiful girl

Jaan	*aur*	*Ravi*	*acchee*	*ladkee*	*hãi*
John	&	Ravi	Good	boys	are

John & Ravi are good boys

kaunsii	*kitaab*	*mooṭii*	*hai*
which (one)	book	thick	is

Which one is the thick book

1. Adjectives come before & after nouns.

   e.g. *ya mooṭii kitaab hai*

   ya kitaab mooṭii hai

2. *aa* ending adjectives can be classified as marked adjectives. They will change into *ee* & *ii* according to the number & gender of the noun it qualifies-*aa* for masculine singular- *ee* for masculine Plural & *ii* for feminine singular & plural

This rule refers to Pronouns in Possessive forms also e.g

meeraa	*doost*	My friend	M. Sg.
meeree	"	" friends	M. Pl.
meerii	*behan*	My sister	F. Sg.
safeed	*kurtaa*	White Shirt	
Laal	"	Red Shirt	

(Both are unmarked adjectives)

Kaalaa kapḍaa	Black Cloth
Kaalii saaḍii	Black Sari
Kaalee loog	Black people

SUPPLEMENT

Practise the sounds

calnaa	to walk	*chalnaa*	to cheat
coor	Thief	*choor*	edge
sooc	think	*puuch*	Ask
Juuṭhaa	polluted	*Jhuuṭhaa*	liar
suuj	swell	*suujh*	Flash

———o———

CYCLE - 4

Topical Focus : General conversation on profession & Nationality

Grammatical Focus : Verb to be *'hai'* is locative case sign *mẽe* in into *per* & at by

Interrogative : *Kahãa* - where ?

Ritual : *maaluum hai* - know /understand

M 1. *maĩ vakiil hũu* - I am a lawyer

M 2. *ham hindustaanii haĩ* - We are Indians

M 3. *voo hindii vidyaarthii hai* - He is a Hindi student

M 4. *unkoo tamil maaluum hai* - They know Tamil

M 5. *hamaaree baccee bhaarat-mẽe haĩ* - Our children are in India

M 6. *aap kaun haĩ ?* - Who are you ?

M 7. *aap loog kaun haĩ ?* - Who are you (all) people?

M 8. *voo kaun haĩ ?* - Who is he ?

M 9. *kyaa unkoo tamil maaluum haĩ ?* - Do they know Tamil? (language)

M10. *aap kee baccee kahãã hai ?* - Where are your children?

C1 *A aap Kaun hai ?* - Who are you?

B mai vakiil hũũ - I am a lawyer.

A kyaa aap daakṭar hai ?- Are you a doctor?

B Jii nahii mai vakiil hũũ- No Sir/Madam I am a lawyer

C2 *A aap kaun hai ?* - Who are you?

B ham vidyaarthii hai ? - we are students.

A aap kannaḍkee vidyaarthii hai ? - Are you kannada students?

B nahii ham tamil kee vidyaarthii hai ? - No, we are Tamil Students.

C3 *A aapkee baccee kahãã hai ?* - Where are your Children.

B hamaaree baccee bhaarat mẽẽ hai ? - Our children are in India

A aapkee sab baccee bhaarat mẽẽ hai ? - Are all your childern in India?

B nahii eek baccaa amerikaa mẽẽ hai ? - One child is in America

C4 *A app loog kaun hai ?* - *Who are you (guys) people?*

B ham hindustaani hai ? - *We are all Indian*

A aapkoo hindii maaluum hai ? *Do you know Hindi*

B jii hãã hamkoo maaluum- hai ? *Yes Sir/Madam, we know Hindi.*

VOCABULARY

Hindustaanii	Indians	*baccee*	Children
Bhaarat	India	*maaluum*	know/ understand
Loog	People		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *mai* substitute all other Pronouns and make relevent changes in verb to be

M2 In place of *hindustaanii* substitute other Nationalities like *angreez*, British, *Jaapaanii*, Japanese, *amerikii* American, *ruusii* Russian *Ciinii* Chinese etc.,

M3 In place of *hindii* substitute other languages like kannada angreezii, telugu speenis etc.,

M4 In place of *unkoo* substitute *mujhkoo* to me, hamkoo to us, aapkoo to you, etc.,

M5 In Place of *haamaaree* substitute other Pronouns in possessive case like, *meeree*, aapkee

LEARNERS' NOTE

maaluum hai know / understand. Note that whenever *maaluum* is used, subject will always take dative case sign *'koo'*.

In Hindi II Person Pronouns are three
tuu - Not to be used (Thou)

tum-For very familiar youngsters sons etc., (you)
aap - honorific singular & Plural you

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

aap	*kaun*	*hai ?*
you	who	are

Who are you ?

ham	*loog*	*hindustaanii*	*hãi*
we	people	Indians	are

We are Indians

vee	*hindii*	*vidyaarthii*	*haĩ*
They	Hindi	students	are

They are Hindi students

Note that the word order in Hindi is subject object & predicate whereas in English subject Predicate & object.
Note The verb to be form in present tense *hai* & its variations with change of pronouns.

maĩ hũũ	I am	*kaun hai*	who is
ham haĩ	we are	*kaun kaun haĩ*	who are (all) ?
tuu hai	thou art		
tum hoo	you are	familian form	
aap haĩ	you are		
ya hai	He is, she is, this is		
voo hai	He is, she is, this is		
vee haĩ	He is, she is, they are		
yee haĩ	He is, she is, those are, these are		

SUPPLEMENT

Use all the pronouns in meaningful sentences using verb to be *hai* with variations

Practise aspirated and unaspirated sound

pal	moment	*Phal*	fruit
kaanaa	squint eyed	*khaanaa*	Food meal
taalii	clap	*thaalii*	plate
kaalii	Black	*khaalii*	empty

Collect more similar words from your teachers & elders.
Practise the dialogue with your peers.

CYCLE - 5

Topical Focus : Conversation about a friend's residence.

Grammatical Focus : Present tense (verb) *rah* to be (live) in all persons

Interrogative : *kab?* when ?

Ritual : *bahut acchaa* very good

M 1. *maĩ mumbaii mẽe rahtaa hũũ* - I Live in Bombay

M 2. *meerii chooṭii behan jayanagar mẽe rahtii hai* - My younger sister lives in jayanagar

M 3. *meeree doo baḍe bhaaii amerikaa mẽe rahtẽe haĩ* - My two elder brothers are in America

M 4. *vee kahãã rahtee haĩ ?* - Where do they live ?

M 5. *aapkii chooṭii behan kahãã rahtii haĩ ?* - Where does your younger sister live ?

M 6. *Amerikaa mẽe kaun kaun rahtee haĩ ?* - Who are all (living) in America ?

C1 **A** *aap kahãã rahtee haĩ?* - Where do you live ?

B *maĩ mumbaii mẽẽ rahtaa hũũ* - I live in Bombay.

A *mumbaii mẽẽ kahãã rahtee haĩ ?* - Where do you live in Bombay?

B *mumbaii mẽẽ daadar mẽẽ rahtaa hũũ* - I live in Dadar in Bombay.

A *bahut acchaa* - Very good

C2 **A** *aapkii behan kahãã rahtii hai ?* - Where does your sister live ?

B *voo Jayanagar mẽẽ rahtii hai* - She lives in Jayanagar.

A *voo aapkii chooṭiibehan-hai ?* - Is she your younger sister ?

B *Jii hãã voo meerii chooṭii-behan hai* - Yes she is my younger sister.

C3 **A** *aapkee baḍee bhaaii bhaarat mẽẽ haĩ ?* - Does Your elder brother live in India?

B *nahiĩ vee amerikaa mẽẽ-rahtee haĩ* - No, he lives in America.

A *aapkee doonõõ baḍee bhaaii amerikaa mee rahtee haĩ ?* - Do both of your elder brothers live in America?

B *hãã doonõõ amerikaa mẽẽ rahtee haĩ* - Yes both live in America.

VOCABULARY

rah live

chooṭaa / chooṭii / chooṭee / younger small

baḍee badaa *baḍii* elder/big

bhaaii brother

behan sister

doonõõ Both

bhaaii Brother

behin Sister

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *maĩ* substitute *ham tum voo/ya vee/yee* & *aap* make necessary changes in the verb.

In place of *mumbaii mẽẽ* substitute *ghar mẽẽ* in the *house hooṭal mẽẽ duukaan mẽẽ* etc.,

M2 In place of *behan* substitute *bhaaii* brother, *caacaa* uncle *doost* friend *vakiil* lawyer etc.,

M3 In place of *doo* substitute *tiin* three *caar* four, *saat* seven

In place of *baḍee* substitute *chooṭee* younger small.

In place of *bhaaii* substitute *behan* sister *bhaabhii*-sister in law & make appropriate changes in verb.

LEARNERS' NOTE

bahut acchaa very good this is expressed by the listener when the speaker says or does a good thing which pleases the listener. *tuu*-thou should not be used for any body except for God and very very close persons.

maĩ	*mumbaii*	*mẽẽ*	*rahtaa*	*hũũ*
I	Bombay	in	live	am

I live in Bombay

meeri	*chooṭii*	*behan*	*Jayanagar*	*mẽe*	*rahtii*	*hai*
my	younger	sister	Jayanagar	in	live	is

My younger sister lives in Jayanagar

meeree	*doo*	*baḍe*	*bhaaii*	*amerikaa*	*mẽe*	*rahtee*	*hai*
my	two	elder	brothers	America	in	live	are

My two elder brothers live in America

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

1. Note the marked adjectives *chooṭaa* & *baḍa* Both have three forms.
2. Plural for *behan* is *behanẽe* sisters
3. Just as marked adjectives take variations according to the number & gender of the noun it qualifies, even the verb *rah* also varies.

Note the table in the supplement & practise.

SUPPLEMENT

1. Narrate where your family members are
2. Observe the following :

1.	*chooṭii behan*	younger sister
2.	*baḍee bhaaii*	elder brother
3.	*bhaabhii*	sister in-law
4.	*bhaabhiyãã*	sisters in-law
5.	*behanẽe*	sisters

TABLE

maĩ rahtaa hũũ	I live
ham rahtee haĩ	We live
tuu rahataa hai	Thou liveth
tum rahtee hoo	You live
aap rahtẽe haĩ	You live
voo rahtaa hai	He lives
voo rahtii hai	She lives
ya rahataa hai	He lives
ya rahtii hai	She lives
vee rahtii hai	She lives
vee rahtii haĩ	They live (f)
vee rahtee haĩ	They live (m)
kaun rahtaa hai ?	Who lives (m)
kaun rahtee haĩ	Who live (m)
kaun rahtii hai / haĩ	Who lives / live

———o———

CYCLE - 6

Topical Focus : Daily routine

Grammatical Focus : Finite verbs in Present tense

Interrogative : *Kab* when, *kitnee bajee* at what time (o'clock)

Ritual : *kabhii kabhii* occasionally/some times

M 1. *vidyaarthii rooz skuul Jaatee haĩ* - Students go to school every day

M 2. *vee rooz kheeltee bhii haĩ* - They also play every day.

M 3. *ladkiyãã bhii rooz skuul Jaatii haĩ* - Girls also go to school everyday

M 4. *vidyaarthii kabhii kabhii skuul nahĩi Jaatee* - Students (Boy) occasionally do not go to school

M 5. *Vidyaarthii rooz kahãã Jaatee haĩ ?* - Where do the students go every day ?

M 6. *kyaa vee kheeltee nahĩi* - Do they not play ?

M 7.		*ladkiyaã kahãã jaatii haĩ*	- Where do the girls go ?
M 8.		*Vidyaarthii kab skuul nahĩi Jaatee ?*	- When do the students not go to school ?
M 9		*vee kabhii kabhii nahĩi Jaatee*	- They sometimes (occasionally) do not go to school
C1	A	*tum kaun hoo ?*	- Who are you ?
	B	*maĩ vidyaarthi hũũ*	- I am a student.
	A	*tum kahãã Jaatee hoo?*	- Where do you go ?
	B	*maĩ rooz skuul Jaataa hũũ*	- I go to school daily.
	A	*kyaa tum itwar koo bhii Jaatee hoo ?*	- Do you go (to school) on sunday also ?
	B	*Nahĩi maĩ kabhii kabhii nahĩi Jaataa*	- No I don't go some time
C2	A	*tum skuul mẽẽ kyaa kyaa kartee hoo ?*	- What all do you do in the school
	B	*maĩ skuul mẽẽ padhtaa-hũũ aur kheltaa bhii hũũ*	- I study in the school and also play
	A	*tumhaaraa skuul kitnee bajee see kitnee bajee tak hai*	- Your school works from What time to what time ?
	B	*hamaaraa skuul suba das bajee see doopahar caar bajee tak hai*	- Our school works (is) from 10 a.m. to 4 p.m.
C3	A	*Vidyaarthii kab skuul nahĩi Jaatee*	- When will the students do not go to school ?
	B	*vee itwaar kee din nahĩi Jaatee*	- They don't go on sundays
	A	*kyaa tyoohaar kee din bhii skuul Jatee haĩ ?*	- Do they go to school on festival days also.

	B	*Kabhii kabhii nahĩi Jaatee*	- Some times (they) do not go.
C4	A	*tumhaaree skuul mẽẽ ladkiyaã bhii padhtii haĩ ?*	- Do girls also study in your school ?
	B	*Jii hãã vee bhii padhtii haĩ*	- Yes sir they also study (in school).
	A	*tumhaaree darjee mẽẽ kitnii ladkiyaã haĩ ?*	- How many girls are there in your class ?
	B	*meeree darjee mẽẽ aath-ladkiyaa haĩ*	- There are eight girls in my class.

VOCABULARY

skuul	school	*badhaii*	carpenter
kitnee bajee	what time	*dhoobii*	washerman
see	from	*darjii*	Tailor
tak	till	*Jaa*	go
ladkiyaã	Girls	*Kisaan*	Farmer
darjaa	class	*kheet*	Field
padh	study/read	*naac*	Dance
kheel	play	*gaa*	sing
suba	morning	*rooz*	everyday/ daily
doopahar	afternoon		
itwaar	sunday		
Tyoohaar	Festival		
chuṭṭii	Leave/holiday		
bhii	also		
kabhii-kabhii	sometimes/ occasionally/ now and then		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *vidyaarthii* substitute *kisaan* 'farmers' in place of *skuul* substitute *kheet*

M2 In place of *kheeltee* substitute *gaatee* /sing

M3 In place *rooz* daily substitute *kabhii kabhii* some times and in place of *skuul* substitute *mandir* Temple.

M4 In place of *vidyaarthii* substitute *vakill* lawyer and in place of school substitute *adaalat* Court.

Change the subject by using professional persons and use appropriate verbs.

e.g. *Dhoobii kapḍaa dhootaa* hai
washerman washes the clothes

similarly

badhaii .....

darjii .....

adhyaapak .....

etc.,

LEARNERS' NOTE

1. Note that verb root *taa, tee, tii* will form the present tense verb *taa* is added for masculine singular *tee* for masculine Plural & honurific singular and *tii* for feminine singular & Plural e.g.

moohan ḍaudtaa hai	Moohan runs
ladkee padhtee haĩ	Boys read
saralaa gaatii hai	sarala sings
ladkiyãã naactii haĩ	Girls dance

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

Vidyaarthii	*rooz*	*skuul*	*jaatee*	*haĩ*
students	daily	school	go	are

Students go to school daily

vee	*rooz*	*kheeltee*	bhii	haĩ
They	daily	play	also	are

They also play every day.

ladkiyãã	*bhii*	*rooz*	*skuul*	*Jaatii*	*haĩ*
Girls	also	daily	school	go	are

Girls also go to school every day

1. Kyaa kyaa (what all) use a couple of sentences with this.

2. Conjugate all the verbs you know using all pronouns in present tense e.g. gaa sing

			Fem
maĩ	gaataa hũũ	I sing	gaatii
ham	gaatee haĩ	we sing	"
tuu	gaataa hai	Thou singeth	"
tum	gaatee hoo	you sing	"
aap	gaatee haĩ	you sing	"
voo	gaataa hai	He sing / They	"
vee	gaatee haĩ	He sings	"
ya	gaataa hai	He/s sings	"
yee	gaatee haĩ	He sing	"

SUPPLEMENT

Converse with a friend about daily routine in simple present tense with all the verbs you know

e.g.

maĩ	*pãc*	*bajee*	*uṭhtaa*	*hũu*
"	*chee*	"	*nahaataa*	"
"	*saat*	"	*kaafii piitaa*	"
"	*aaṭh*	"	*daftar Jaataa*	"
"	*pãc*	"	*ghar aataa*	"
"	*saat*	"	*khaanaa khaataa*	"
"	*aaṭh*	"	*see paḍhtaa*	"
"	*das*	"	*sootaa*	"

CYCLE - 7

Topical Focus : Past residence & actions

Grammatical Focus : verb to be in Past tense with all Pronouns & a few nouns.

Interrogative : *Kahãã kahãã* where all
beecaaraa Poor fellow
beecaaree Poor chaps
beecaarii Poor woman/ women

Ritual : *hii* emphatic Particle

M 1. *maĩ aaj suba ghar mẽe thaa* - I was at home this morning.

M 2. *kal meeree pitaajii dillii mẽe thee* - Yesterday my father was in Delhi.

M 3. *kal raat koo tumhaarii mãã hamaaree ghar mẽe thii* - Last night your mother was in our house.

M 4. *soomvaarkoo beecaarii ladkiyãã kahãã thii* - Where were the poor girls on Monday?

M 5. *aap aaj suba kahã̃ã thee?*- Where were you today morning ?

M 6. *kal tumhaaree pitaajii kahã̃ã thee ?* - where was your father yesterday ?

M 7. *kal raat koo tumhaarii mã̃ã kiskee ghar mẽẽ thii?* - In whose house was your mother yesterday?

M 8. *soomvaarkoo beecaarii ladkiyã̃ã kahã̃ã thiĩ* - Where were the poor girls on Monday.

C1 **A** *app aaj suba kahã̃ã thee* - Where were you today morning ?

B *maĩ aaj suba ghar mẽẽ hii thaa* - I was at home only this morning.

A *kyaa aap rooz suba ghar mẽẽ rahtee haĩ ?* - Will you be at home every morning

B *hã̃ã rahtaa hũũ kabhii kabhii ghuumnee Jaataa hũũ* - Yes (mostly) I will be at home, some times I go for a walk.

C2 **A** *kal tumhaaree pitaajii kahã̃ã thee ?* - Where was your father yesterday?

B *Kal vee dillii mẽẽ thee* - Yesterday he was in Dehli

A *kyaa parsõõ bhii vee dillii mẽẽ thee ?* - was he in Delhi day before yesterday also ?

B *nahiĩ vee sirf kal dillii mẽẽ thee* - No he was in Delhi only yesterday.

C3 **A** *meerii mã̃ã kal raat kahã̃ã thii ?* - Where was my mother last night ?

B *vee meeree gharmẽẽ thii* - She was in my house.

A *vaapas nahiĩ aayiĩ ?* - Did not return ?

B *nahiĩ kal baariṣ thii* - No yesterday there was rain

C4 **A** *soomvarkoo ladkiyã̃ã kahã̃ã thiĩ ?* - Where were the girls on monday?

B *vee kaaleej mẽẽ thiĩ* - They were in the college.

A. *kaaleej mẽẽ kaam thaa* ?- Was there work in the college ?

B *hã̃ã naaṭak thaa* - Yes there was a drama.

VOCABULARY

suba	morning
sāam	evening
raat	night
Pitaajii	Father
maataajii	Mother
naaṭak	Drama
Soomvaar	Monday
Maṅgalvaar	Tuesday
budhvaar	Wednesday
guruvaar	Thursday
śukravaar	Friday
śanicar	Staurday
itvaar	Sunday
kal	yesterday/tomorrow
parsõõ	Day after tomorrow/day before yesterday
baariṣ	rain
śaadii	marriage
duukaan	shop
caacaajii	uncle

TEACHERS NOTE

M1 In place of *maĩ* substitute *ham* - vee, *voo*, He/she *vee* he/she/they/and rewrite the sentences making appropriate changes in the verb. In place of *Kal* yesterday substitute *śaamkoo*, in the evening, *raatkoo* in the night *parsõõ*- day before yesterday. In place of *ghar* house, *skuul mẽẽ* in the school, *kaalej mẽẽ* in the college *duukaan mẽẽ* in the shop *daftar mẽẽ* in the office.

M2 In place of *pitaajii* father, *bhaaii*-brother, *caacaajii* uncle *maataajii* mother.

M3 In place of *tumhaarii maã* substitute *tumhaarii behan* your sister *tumhaaree pitaajii* your father *tumhaarii naanii*- your grand mother.

M4 In place of *soomvaar* subsitute the names of other week days In palce of *kaaleej mẽẽ* substitute *śaadii kee ghar mẽẽ* in the wedding house, saheelii kee ghar mẽẽ in friend's house.

LEARNERS' NOTE

beecaara has three forms as it is marked adjective *beecaara* poor bellow m.sg. *beecaaree* m.pl. *beecaarii* F.sg./pl

When more than one place of visit to be elicited, *kahãã kahãã* where all is used e.g.

tum maisuur mẽẽ kahãã kahãã thee ? where all were you in mysore ? *maisuur mẽẽ maĩ yaadavgiri mee our sayaaajii raav sadak mẽẽ thaa.* I was in yadavagiri & sayyajirao Road in Mysore.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

aap	*aaj*	*suba*	*kahãã*	*thee*
you	to day	morning	where	were

Where were you to-day morning ?

kyaa	*aap*	*rooz*	*suba*	*ghar*	*mẽẽ*	*rahtee*	*hãi?*
what	you	daily	morning	house	in	live	are ?

Are you at home every morning ?

maĩ	*kabhii kabhi*	*suba*	*ghuumnee*	*jaataa*	*hũũ*
I	sometimes	morning	walk for	go	am

Sometimes go for a walk in the morning

SUPPLEMENT

Note the following table and use in your own sentences so as to bring out the auxilary verb in present tense *hai* is & past tense *thaa* was with variations

	Pronoun	Present	Past	
I	*maĩ*	*hũũ*	*thaa*	am/was
	ham	*haĩ*	*thee*	were/are
		"	*thiĩ*	Are/were
II	*tuu*	*hai*	*thaa*	are/were
		"	*thii*	are/were /F
	tum	*hoo*	*thee*	are/were/M
	Tum	hoo	*thiĩ*	are were/F
	aap	*haĩ*	*thee*	are/were/M

	"	*thii*	are/were/F
III *voo/ya*	"	*thaa*	was/in/M
"	"	*thii*	Is/was/F
vee/yee	*haĩ/haĩ*	*thee*	Is/are
		thii	was/were M/F

———o———

CYCLE - 8

Topical Focus : Present & past continuous actions

Grammatical Focus : Continuous tense

Interrogative Ritual : *kin kin kee paas* with who all (whom) *doo-tiin* two three *aaṭh - das* eight or ten

M 1. *vidyaarthii kamree mẽẽ paḍh rahee haĩ* - Boys are reading in the room.

M 2. *jaanakii suba gaa rahii thii* - Janaki was singing in the morning.

M 3. *adhyaapak gaṇit sikhaa rahee haĩ* - Teacher is teaching maths.

M 4. *kal ham hindii siikh rahee thee* - yesterday we were learning Hindi.

M 5. *saralaa klaas mẽẽ doo tiin gaanee gaa rahii thii* - Sarala was singing 2-3 songs in the class.

M 6. *uskee paas aaṭh-das hindii kitabẽẽ haĩ* - He has 8- 10 Hindi books

M 7. *goopal aur naviin kee paas skuutar hai* -Gopal & Navin have scooters.

M 8. *vidyaarthii kamree mẽe kyaa kar rahee haĩ ?* - What are the students doing in the room ?

M 9. *Jaanakii suba kyaa kar rahii thii* - What was Janaki doing in the morning?

M 10 *kaun ganit sikhaa rahee thee?* - Who was teaching maths?

M 11 *aap kab hindii siikh rahee thee ?* - When were you learning Hindi ?

M 12 *saralaa klaas mẽe kitnee gaanee gaa rahii thii* - How many songs was Sarala singing in the class ?

M 13 *uskee paas kitnii hindii kitaabẽe haĩ ?* - How many Hindi books he has ?

M 14 *kin kinkee paas skuuṭar haĩ* - Who all have scooters ?

C1 **A** *vidyaarthii kahãa haĩ* -
B *vidyaarthii kamree mẽe haĩ* -

A *vee kyaa kar rahee haĩ* -
B *vee padh rahee haĩ* -

C2 **A** *kaun suba gaa rahii thii ?* -
B *janaki suba gaa rahii thii.* -
A *voo kyaa gaa rahii thii ?* -
B *voo hindii gaanee gaa rahii thii ?* -

C3 **A** *kaun ganit sikaa rahee haĩ ?* -

B *adyaapak ganṭ sikhaa rahee haĩ ?* -
A *vee kiskoo ganṭ sikaa rahee haĩ ?* -
B *vidyaarthiyõkoo ganṭ sikhaa rahee haĩ ?* -

C4 **A** *kal ham kyaa siikh rahee thee ?* -
B *kal ham hindii siikh rahee thee?* -
A *kaun hamẽe hindii sikhaa rahee thee?* -
B *adhyaapak hamẽe hindii sikhaa rahee thee?* -

VOCABULARY

eek	one	*padh*	Read
doo	two	*siikh*	Learn
tiin	Three	*sikhaa*	Teach
caar	Four	*doo/tiin*	two/three
pãac	Five	*aaṭh/das*	eight or ten
chee	six	*adhyaapak*	Teacher
saat	seven	*gaanee*	songs
aaṭh	eight	*gaa*	sing
nau	nine	*gaa rahii hai*	is singing (F)
das	Ten	*Padh rahee haĩ*	are reading (M)
ganṭ	Maths	*likh*	write
daud	run	*pichlee*	Previous/last
khaa	eat	*mahiinaa*	month
pii	drink	*saal*	year

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *padh rahee hai* substitute *gaa,* sing *naac* dance *soo* sleep *likh* write etc.,

M2 In place of *gaa* sing *sii* stitch, *naac* dance, *daud*-run, *khaa* eat, *pii* drink

M3 In place of *ganit* substitute *itihaas* history, *bhuugool*-geography, *hindii* Hindi *angreezii* English

M4 In place *kal* yesterday substitute *Parsõõ* day before yesterday *pichlee mahiinee* last month *Pichlee saal* last year

M5 In place of *doo tiin* substitute *caar/pãac* 3-4 *aath das* 8-10. In place of *ghar mẽẽ* substitute *skuul mẽẽ* in the school *ghar mẽẽ* at home *thiyeetar mẽẽ* in the theatre

M6 In place of *kitaabẽẽ* books substitute *kalamẽẽ* pens *ghadiyãa* watches *peetiyãa* boxes.

M7 In place of *goopaal, naviin kee paas, meeree paas* with me *unkee paas* with them *hamaaree paas* with us.

LEARNERS' NOTE

Kee paas-with / near / in the possession of *kiskee paas* with whom ?

kin kin kee paas with who all *aath das* 8-10 is used when you refer to very few things - more than 10 you use *das biis* etc., 10-20

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

vidyaarthii	*kamree*	*mẽẽ*	*padh*	*rahee*	*hai*
students	room	in	read	ing	are

Students are reading in the room

Jaanakii	*suba*	*gaanaa*	*gaa rahii*	*thii*
Janakii	morning	song	singing	was

Janaki was singing in the morning

saralaa	*klaas*	*mẽẽ*	*doo-tiin*	*gaanee*	*gaa rahii*	*thii*
Saralaa	class	in	two three	songs	singing	was

Sarala was singing two three songs in the class

kin	*kinkee*	*pass*	*skuutar*	*hai*
Who all	who all	with	skuutar	is

Who all have scooters ?

1. *rahaa* m.sg. *rahee* m.pl. *rahii* (F) sg & pl
2. In present continuous & past continuous tense only the difference in *hai* & *thaa* is and was

SUPPLEMENT

Practise the table

mai	*padh*	*rahaa*	*hũũ*	I am reading	(m)
"	"	*rahii*	"	" "	(F)
ham	"	*rahee*	*hai*	We are "	(M)
"	"	"	*thee*	" were "	(M)
ham	*padh*	*rahii*	*thii*	We were reading	(F)
voo	"	*rahaa*	*hai*	He is reading	(M)
"	"	*rahii*	*hai*	she " "	(F)

vee	"	*rahee*	*thee*	He was "	(M)
				They were "	(M)
"	"	*rahii*	*thii*	" " "	(F)
					Pl

ladkaa padhtaa hai
" " *rahaa hai*
" " " *thaa*
} Frame similar sentences & drill

———o———

CYCLE - 9

Topical Focus : Movement of Past

Grammatical Focus : Past forms of intransitive verbs use of *Jab* when *Tab* then

Interrogative : *Jab tab* whenever
Jab Jab tab tab then (all)

Rituals : *Chattiis kaa farak* difference of 36 (36) opposite to each other

M 1.	*jab aap meeree ghar aayee tab maĩ laibrarii mẽe thaa*	- When you came to my my house, I was in the Library
M2	*Jab voo kamree mẽe aayii- tab maĩ bagiicee mẽe thaa*	When she came to the room,I was in the garden
M3	*jab ravi sooyaa tab jagan uṭhaa*	- When Ravi slept then Jagan woke up
M4	*Jab baariṣ aayii tab kisaan kheet mẽe gayee*	- When it rained, farmers went to the field.

M5	*Jab jab chuṭṭii hootii hai, tab tab ladḳee kheeltee haĩ*	- Whenever there is holiday then boys play.
M6	*raam aur raavaṇ mẽẽ chattiis kaa farak hai*	- There is a world of difference between Rama & Ravana
M7	*Jab maĩ aapkee ghar aayaa tab aap kahãã thee?*	- When I came to your house, where were you?
M8	*Jab voo kamree mẽẽ aayii tab tum kahãã thee ?*	-When she came to the room, where were you?
M9	*Jab ravi sooyaa tab kaun uṭhaa ?*	- When Ravi slept, then who woke up ?
M10	*jab baariṣ aayii tab kisaan kahãã gayee ?*	- When it rained, where did the farmers go ?
M10	*raam aur raavaṇ mẽẽ kyaa farak hai ?*	- What is the difference between Rama & Ravana ?

C1	A	*app kab meeree ghar aayee ?*	- When did you come to my house ?
	B	*maĩ suba aayaa thaa*	- I had come in the morning.
	A	*aap tab kahãã gayee thee*	- Where had you gone then ?
	B	*tab maĩ laibrarii mẽẽ thaa*	- I was in the Library (then)
C2	A	*voo kamree mẽẽ kab aayii ?*	- When did she come to the room ?
	B	*voo nau bajee aayii*	- She came at 9'O clock
	A	*tab maĩ baahar gayaa thaa*	- Then I had gone out
	B	*aap kahãã thee*	- Where were you ?

	A	*tab maĩ bagiicee mẽẽ thaa*	- Then I was in the garden.
C3	A	*jab ravi sooyaa tab kamree mẽẽ kaun thaa*	- When ravi slept who was in the room ?
	B	*Jab ravi sooyaa tab jagan kamree mẽẽ thaa*	- When Ravi slept Jagan was in the room.
	A	*kyaa voo bhii sooyaa?*	- Did he also not sleep ?
	B	*Nahiĩ voo uṭhaa thaa*	- No he was awake
C4	A	*Kisaan kahãã thee ?*	- Where were the farmers?
	B	*vee ghar mẽẽ thee*	- They were at home
	A	*ab kahãã gayee ?*	- Where did they go now?
	B	*baariṣ aayii kheet mẽẽ gayee*	- It rained. They went to the field

VOCABULARY

kab	When	*loog*	People
Jab	When	*khaanaa*	Food
tab	Then	*Farak*	Difference
chattiis	Thirty six	*antar*	Difference
soo	Sleep	*uttar*	North
uṭh	Getup/stand/wake	*dakṣiṇ*	South
bagiicaa	Garden	*ghanṭii*	Bell
kisaan	Farmer/s	*bajii*	Rang
Laibrari	Library	*fursat milii*	Got free time
baariṣ	rain	*sooc*	Think
Jab-Jab	whenever		
padoosii	Neighbour		
mandir	Temple		
tair	Swim		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *aap* substitute other pronouns and make necessary changes in the verb.

In place of *meeree* my substitute *unkee* his/her/their etc.,

In place of *laibrarii* substitute *bazaar* market *maidaan* field *thiyeetar*-theatre

M2 In place of *voo* she substitute *tum* you, *doost* friend, *pitaajii* father

In place of *bagiicee mẽe* in the garden substitute *hooṭal mẽe* in the hotel, *paḍoosii kee ghar mẽe* in the neighbour's house *mandir mẽe* in the temple.

M3 In place of *ravi* substitute *baccaa* child/baby/son in place of *jagan* substitute *mãa* and make necessary changes in the verb.

M4 In place of *baariṣ aayii* it rained substitute *ghaṇṭii bajii* and in place of *kisaan* farmers substitute *vidyaarthii* / student and in place of *kheet* field substitute *skuluu/school* and make necessary changes.

M5 In place of *chuṭṭii* holiday substitute *fursat millii hai* got free time & in place of *kheeltee hai* paly substitute *tairtee hai* swim.

LEARNERS' NOTE

Chattiiskaa Farak means difference of 36 Hindi Nos. 3 & 6 are written in opposite directions when the difference is too much this expression is used

e.g. *uttar aur daks in bhaarat kee loogõo kee khaanee mẽe chattiis kaa farak hai.* There is great difference between food of Northern & Southern people.

Another expression giving the same meaning to indicate vast difference is *zamiin aasmaan kaa antar hai* difference of earth & the sky

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

jab	*aap*	*meeree*	*ghar*	*aayee*	*tab*	*mai*	*laibrarii*	*mẽe*	*thaa*
when	you	my	house	came	then	I	Library	in	was

When you came to my house, I was in the Library

jab	*voo*	*kamree*	*mẽe*	*aayii*	*tab*	*mai*	*bagiice*	*mẽe*	*thaa*
when	she	room	in	came	then	I	garden	in	was

When she came to the room, then I was in the garden

jab	*ravi*	*sooyaa*	*tab*	*Jagan*	*uṭhaa*
when	Ravi	slept	then	Jagan	woke up

When Ravi slept then Jagan woke up

jab	*baariṣ*	*aayii*	*tab*	*kisaan*	*kheet*	*mẽe*	*gayee*
when	rain	came	their	Farmers	field	in	went

When it rained, farmers went to the field

jab jab	*chuṭṭii*	*hootii*	*hai,*	*tab tab*	*ladkee*	*kheeltee*	*hai*
when when	holiday	happens	is	then then	boys	play	are

Whenever there is holiday, the boys play.

This is the only sentence we have so for come across where the word order in English are the same. Note that there is no auxilary verb in this sentence.

1. All the verbs used in this cycle are intransitive verbs.
2. Verbs ending with a consonant take *aa* to form the past tense e.g.

padh	Read	*padhaa*	Read
likh	Write	*likhaa*	Wrote
kah	Say	*kahaa*	Said
bool	Speak	*boolaa*	Spoke
daud	Run	*daudaa*	Ran
puuch	Ask	*Puuchaa*	Asked
sun	Listen	*sunaa*	Listened

3. Transitive verbs in past tense take a different form which will be dealt in subsequent cycles.
4. Words ending with vowels will take different forms in Past tense
5. ii & ee ending verbs take the short form and take *yaa* e.g.

pii	drink	*piyaa*	Drank
dee	give	*diyaa*	Gave

6. *oo* ending verbs also take *yaa* in past tense

soo	sleep	*sooyaa*	slept
khoo	loose	*khooyaa*	lost
boo	sow	*booyaa*	sowed
dhoo	wash	*dhooyaa*	washed

LEARNERS' NOTE

Identify the irregular verbs which do not follow any of the above rules & use in your own sentences.

Jaa	Go	*gayaa*	went
aa	Come	*aayaa*	came
kar	Do	*kiyaa*	Did
Lee	Take	*liyaa*	Took

———o———

CYCLE - 10

Topical Focus	:	Voluntary actions
Grammatical Focus	:	*'Nee'* forms of simple Past tense only.
Interrogative	:	*Kisnee* who *Kinhoonee* who/who all
Rituals	:	*too kyaa huaa?* what if ?

M 1	*raghunee rooṭii khaayii*	-	Raghu ate bread.
M 2	*gaurinee caar aam khaayee*	-	Gouri ate four mangoes.
M 3	*maasṭarnee baccõõ koo gaṇit* sikhaayaa	-	Teacher taught Maths to the boys.
M 4	*mãã nee laḍkiyõõkoo paḍhaayaa*	-	Mother taught the girls.
M 5	*kisnee rooṭii khaayii ?*	-	Who ate bread ?
M 6	*gaurii nee kitnee aam khaayee ?*	-	How many mangoes did Gowri eat ?

M 7	*kisnee baccõõ koo ganit sikhaayaa ?*	- Who taught Maths to the boys ?
M 8	*mããnee kinkoo padhaayaa*	- Whom did the mother teach ?

C1	A	*raghu kahãã thaa ?*	- Where was Raghu ?
	B	*voo ghar mẽẽ thaa*	- He was at home.
	A	*usnee kyaa kiyaa ?*	- What did he do ?
	B	*usnee khaaya*	- He ate.
	A	*usnee kyaa khaayaa ?*	- What did he eat ?
	B	*usnee kitnii rootiyãã khaayii ?*	- How many bread did he eat ?
	A	*usnee caar rootiyãã khaaii*	- He ate four breads.

C2	A	*gaurii nee kyaa khaayaa ?*	- What did Gowri eat ?
	B	*gaurii nee aam khaayaa?*	- Gowri ate a mango.
	A	*usnee kitnee aam khaayee ?*	- How many mangoes did she eat ?
	B	*usnee caar aam khaayee*	- She ate four mangoes.

C3	A	*maastarnee kyaa kiyaa ?*	- What did the master do?
	B	*maasternee sikhaayaa*	- Master taught.
	A	*maasternee kyaa sikhaayaa ?*	- What did the master teach ?
	B	*maasternee ganit sikhaayaa*	- Master taught Maths
	A	*maasternee kinkoo ganit sikhaayaa ?*	- To whom did the master teach Maths ?

	B	*maaster nee baccoon-koo ganit sikhaayaa*	- Master taught maths to the boys.

C4	A	*ghar mẽẽ kitnii ladkiyãã thii ?*	-How many girls were at home ?
	B	*ghar mẽẽ caar ladkiyãã thii.*	- There were four girls at home.
	A	*unhoonee kyaa kiyaa ?*	- What did they do ?
	B	*unhonee padhaa*	- They read.
	A	*unhee kisnee padhaayaa*	- Who taught them ?
	B	*mãã nee ladkiyõõn koo padhaayaa*	- Mother taught the girls

VOCABULARY

nee - is the nominative sign. It comes with the subject selectively. It has no special meaning.

ladkiyõõ koo	To the girls		
rootii	Bread	*bhuugooal*	Geography
aam	Mango	*itihaas*	History
kiskoo	To whom	*vijnaan*	Science
kinkoo	To whom all	*laa*	Bring
keelaa	banana	*bool*	Speak
santraa	Orange	*bhuul*	Forget
khariid	Buy	*lag*	Begin
Kaat	Cut	*Cuk*	Finish
		sak	can

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *rootii* bread substittue *keelee* bananas, santree Oranges.

M2 In place of *caar aam* four mangoes *caar rooṭiyãã* 4 breads *eek aam* one mango.

In place of *khaayee* ate substitute *Khariidee* bought *kaaṭee* cut.

M3 In place of *gaṇith* Maths substitute *bhuugool* Geography *itihaas* History *vijnaan* Science.

M4 In place of *ladkiyõõṅkoo* For Girls substitute *baccoṅ -koo* to the children *vidyaarthiyoṅkoo* for the students.

behanõõkoo to the sisters. In all the sentences make necessary changes in the form of the verb.

LEARNERS' NOTE

Remember most of the verbs in past tense end with *aa* & they change into *'ee'* & *ii / iĩ* according to the number & gender of the object.

too kyaa huaa? what if ? If some body thinks that an action is serious and another person thinks it is normal this expression is used e.g.

A *meeree ghar coor aaayaa thaa !*
Thief had come to my house

B *Too kyaa huaa* ?
what if ?

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

1. *nee* is the nominative case sign
2. *nee* comes with the subject in Past tense
3. *nee* comes only with the transtitive verbs in Past tense
4. verbs taking object is transtitive verb.

e.g. *maĩ nee khaayaa* I ate

maĩ gayaa I went

5. When *nee* comes verb will agree with the object in number & gender

raamnee rooṭii khyaayii Rama ate In this sentence though the subject Rama is masculine verb has feminine ending because *khaa* eat is transtitive verb and it is in past tense. So the verb agrees with the object. Here *rooṭii* being feminine the verb is *khaayii.*

6. When the object takes dative/objective case sign always the verb will be in masculine singular form

e.g. *mãã nee ladkiyõõnkoo padhaayaa*
Mother taught the girls

7. When the object is understood in a sentence always verb will be in masculine singular form.

8. The following six verbs are exceptions to this rule. Though they are transitive verbs and though they come in past tense *nee* rule does not apply.

laa	Bring
bool	Speak/say
bhuul	Forget
lag	Start
cuk	Finish/complete
sak	can/able

raguu nee	*rooṭii*	*khaayii*
Raghu	Bread	ate

Raghu Ate Bread

gauri nee	*caar*	*aam*	*khaayee*
Gowri	Four	mangoes	ate

Gowri ate four mangoes.

maasṭernee	*baccõõṅkoo*	*gaṇit*	*sikhaayaa*
Teacher	children	Maths	taught

Teacher taught maths to children.

mããnee	*ladkiyõõṅkoo*	*paḍhaayaa*
Mother	girls to	taught

Mother taught the girls

SUPPLEMENT

1. Use the exception verbs in your own sentences.
2. Observe the verb endings changes according to the number & gender of the object.
3. Past forms of the verbs follow a pattern

Khaa eat — *khaayaa* ate m.sg.

khaayee ate m.pl. — *khaayii* ate F.sg.

khaayiĩ F. pl.

Only simple past is given in this cycle. Other nee forms of past tenses will be given in the subsequent cycles.

UNIT 2

(CYCLE 11 to 20)

CYCLE - 11

Topical Focus : Remembering the Past and recollecting.

Grammatical Focus : Remaining four *nee* forms of Past transitive verbs.

Interrogative : *Kyaa Kiyaa hai/thaa/hoogaa*
What have you done ?
" had " "
" might you have "

Rituals : *ummiid hai ki* Hope that

M1	*tumnee doo mahiinee pahlee mumbaii deekhaa thaa*	-	Two Months ago you had seen Bombay
M2	*hamnee taaj mahal deekhaa hai*	-	We have seen Tajmahal
M3	*sab vidyaarthiyõonee mahaatmaa gaandhaiijii kaa naam sunaa hoogaa*	-	All students might have heard the name of Mahatma Gandhi
M4	*sab nee kittuur raanii*	-	Every one might have

		cennammaa kii kahaanii Padhii hoogii	read the story of Kittur Rani Chennamma
M5		*maĩ nee muambaii kab deekha thaa ?*	- When had I seen Bombay ?
M6		*taajmahal kis kisnee deekhaa hai ?*	- Who all have seen Tajmahal ?
M7		*mahaatmaa gaandhiijii kaa naam kisnee sunaa hoogaa ?*	- Who might have heard the name of Mahatma Gandhi ?
M8		*aapnee kiskii kahaanii padhii hoogii ?*	- Whose story you might have read ?
C1	A	*tumnee mumbaii deekhaa hai ?*	- Have you seen Bombay?
	B	*haã maĩnee deekhaa thaa*	- Yes I had seen.
	A	*tumnee kab deekhaa thaa ?*	- When had you seen (Bombay)
	B	*maĩnee doo mahiinee pahlee mumbaii deekhaa thaa*	- I had seen Bombay two months ago.
C2	A	*taajmahal kahãã hai?*	- Where is Tajmahal ?
	B	*taajmahal aagree mẽẽ jamunaa nadii kee kinaaree par hai*	- Tajmahal is on the bank of the river Jamuna at Agra.
	A	*aapnee kiskee saath deekha ?*	- With whom did you see ?
	B	*maĩnee apnee doostõõkee saath pichle saal deekhaa*	- I saw last year with my friends.

C3	A	*aapnee baapujii kaa naam sunaa hai ?*	- Have you heard the name of baapuji (Father of the Nation)
	A	*unkaa aslii naam kyaa hai ?*	- What is his real (original) name ?
	B	*unkaa aslii naam moohandaas* karamchand *gaandhii hai*	- His real name is Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi
	A	*aapnee unkaa naam sunaa hoogaa*	- You might have heard his name
	B	*hãm hii kyaa saaree deeskee loogõõnee unkaa naam sunaa hai*	- Why only us, people of the entire nation knows his name.
C4	A	*Jab aap dillii gayee thee tab aapnee laal kilaa dekhaa ?*	- When you went to Delhi (then) did you see the Red Fort.
	B	*nahii maĩ dillii mẽẽ sirf eek din thaa, isliyee nahii deekhaa*	- No I was in Delhi, just for a day, therefore did not see.
		aglee mahiinee deekhnee kii ummiid hai	- Hope to see next month
C5	A	*kittuur kahãã hai ?*	- Where is Kittur ?
	B	*Kittur Karnaaṭak raajy mẽẽ hai*	- It is in Karnataka State
	A	*vahãã eek viir raanii thii uskaa naam cennamaa thaa*	- There was a brave queen. Her name was Chennamma
	A	*usnee kyaa kiyaa ?*	- What did she do ?
	B	*usnee aṅgreezõõ kee khilaaf (ladaayii) ladii*	- She fought a war against (Britishers)
	A	*uskii kahaanii aapnee padhii hoogii.*	- You might have read her story.

B *Ham sabnee padhii hai* - All of us have read (her story)

VOCABULARY

ummiid	Hope
pahlee	Before/first
kahaanii	story
Jamuna nadii	River Yamuna
Kinaaree	Bank of a river
aslii naam	Real name (original name)
deeś	Nation
Loog	People
laal kilaa	Red Fort
Sirf	Only (Just)
isliyee	Therefore
aglee mahiinaa	Next Month
saadhee tiin	3½
Pahaad	Mountain
saroovar	Lake
aurat	Woman
gaanee	Songs
sooc	Think
pii	Drink
Sinemaa	Movie

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In Place of *doo mahiine pahlee* before two months substitute *das din pahlee* Ten days ago *pa~ac mahiinee pahlee* five months ago *saadhee tiin saal*

pahlee three and half years ago. In place of *deekhaa thaa* substitute *gayaa thaa* had gone. Remove *nee* from the subject as *gayaa* is intransitive verb.

M2 In place of *taajmahal* substitute *laal kilaa* Red Fort *bagiicaa* garden, *maanas saroovar Maanasa* lake, *himaalaya pahad* Himalayan mountain.

M3 In place of *vidyaarthiiyõo nee* students, substitute *sab loogõo nee* all people *sub ladkõo nee* all boys *auratõo nee* women.

M4 In place of *kittuur raani cenaammaa kii kahaanii* story of kittur queen chennamma substitute *bhagat sing kii kahaanii* story of *Bhagatsing subhaas Candra boos kii kahaanii* - story of Subhash Chandra Bose.

1. There are seven spoken forms in Hindi Past tense out of which only four forms get *nee.*

2. *mai~ nee khaayaa* — I ate. simple past;
mai~ nee khaayaa thaa — I had eaten; Double past
mai~ nee khaayaa hai — I have eaten present Imperfect.
mai~ nee khaayaa hoogaa — I might have eaten;Doubtful past.

The following three forms do not take nee

Non *nee* forms

mai~ khaataa thaa — I was eating (Past continuous)
mai~ khaa rahaa thaa — I was (going on) eating (Past continuous)
agar tum kahtee too mai~ khaataa — If you had told me, I would have eaten (conditional Past)

3. Root of the verb is imperative mood for the subject *tuu*

e.g. *tuu padh* your read
tuu jaa you go
tuu sun you listen

By adding *'naa'* to the root of the verb infinitive wil be formed

khaa	eat	*khaanaa*	to eat
jaa	go	*jaanaa*	to go
jaanee	for going		
khaanee	for eating		

LEARNERS' NOTE

ummiid hai ki it is hoped that

e.g. *ummiid hai ki tum ai ee es aafiisar banoogee*

We hope that you will become an IAS Officer.

Frame five sentences in each of the seven past forms four with *nee* & three without *nee*. In *nee* forms check whether verb agrees with the object in number & gender.

Observe *hoogaa* also has four forms

hoogaa	M.Sg.
hoongee	M.Pl.
hoogii	F. Sg.

tumnee	*doo*	*mahiinee*	*pahlee*	*mumbaii*	*deekhaa*	*thaa*
You	two	months	before	Bombay	seen	had

You had seen Bombay two months ago

hamnee	*Tajmahal*	*deekhaa*	*hai*
We	Tajmahal	saw	is

We have seen Tajmahal

sab	*vidyaarthiyõonee*	*mahaatma*	*gaandhii*	*kaa*
all	students	Mahatma	Gandhi	's

naam	*sunaa*	*hoogaa*
name	heard	might have

All students might have heard the name of Mahatma Gandhi.

sabnee	*kittuur*	*raani*	*cennammaa*	*kii*	*kahaanii*
All	kittur	queen	Chennamma	of	Story

padhii	*hoogii*
read	might have

All might have read the story of Kittur Rani Chennamma

SUPPLEMENT

Translate the following sentences into Hindi.

1. Boy ate bread
2. She drank water
3. He called girls.
4. They might have seen this movie.
5. When had they seen red fort.
6. Did your sister sing Hindi songs.
7. I had not seen you early.
8. Were you writing ?
9. They were not working.
10. What did you think ?

———o———

CYCLE - 12

Topical Focus : Routine actions.

Grammatical Focus : Habitual tense

Interrogative : *Kitneemẽẽ* within How much

Rituals : *kuch bhii hoo* -
Let anything happen

M1	*voo rooz akhbaar padhaa kartii thii*	-	Everyday she used to read News paper
M2	*Pitaajii rooz daudaa kartee thee*	-	Father used to run everyday..
M3	*khilaadii har din kheelaa kartee thee*	-	Players used to play everyday
M4	*aap caar laakh mẽẽ gaadii beecaa kartee thee ?*	-	You used to sell the vehicle(car) for 4 lakhs.
M5	*voo rooz kyaa padhaa kartit thii ?*	-	What was she used to read every day?

M6	*kaun rooz daudaa kartee thee ?*	- Who used to run everyday ?
M7	*khilaadii har din kyaa kartee thee ?*	- What the players used to do every day ?
M8	*aap kitnee mẽe gaadii becehaa kartee thee ?*	- For how much you used to sell vehicle (car) ?

C1.	**A**	*voo rooz suba kyaa kartii thii ?*	- What was she doing every morning ?
	B	*voo rooz suba kitaab/ akhbaar padhaa kartii thii*	- She usd to read a book. news paper every morning
	A	*kyaa voo hindii kitaab padhaa kartii thii?*	- Was she reading Hindi books ?
	B	*hãã voo hindii kitaabẽe aur angreezii akhbaar padhaa kartii thii*	- Yes, she used to read Hindi books and English Newspapers.
C2	**A**	*pitaajii rooz kahãã* jaatee thee ?	- Where was the father going daily ?
	B	*vee rooz daudaa kartee thee*	- He used to run every day
	A	*vee kab daudaa kartee thee ?*	- When did he used to run ?
	B	*vee suba aur śaam doonõõ vakt daudaa kartee thee*	- He used to run both in the morning as well as in the evening
C3	**A**	*khilaadii har din kyaa kartee thee ?*	- What the players used to do every day ?
	B	*vee rooz caar ghantee kheelaa kartee thee*	- They used to play four hours everyday

A.	*unkoo rooz kheelnaa zaruurii thaa kyaa ?*	Was it necessary for them to play daily?
B.	*hãã unkoo rooz caar ghantee abhyaas karnaa zaruurii thaa*	- Yes It was necessary for them to practise every day 4 hours.

VOCABULARY

khilaadii	Players/sportsmen
akhbaar	News paper
daud	Jogging/run
pitaajii	Father
gaadii	vehicle/car
beec	sell
Caar laakh	Four lakhs
kitnee mẽe	(within)/Howmuch
har	Every/each
din	Day
kuch bhii hoo	Let anything happen/comewhat May
kabhii kabhii	occasionally
kahaaniyãã	Stories
upanyaas	Novel
Kharriid	Buy

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *rooz* Daily substitute ***kabhi kabhii*** occasionally,

In place of *kitaab* substitute *kannad* Kannada, *kahaaniyā̃* stories, *upanyaas* Novel.

M2 In place of *pitaajii* father substitute *maaaiaajii* mother *caacaajii.* Uncle and make necessary changes in the verb form.

M3 In place of *har din* everyday substitute *har suba* every morning *har sāam* every evening *saaraa din* whole day.

M4 In place of *caar laakh* four lakhs substitute *das laakh* 10 lakhs *assii hazaar* 80 thousand etc.,

LEARNERS' NOTE

kuch bhii hoo - Let anything happen

When a person is bent upon doing a thing in spite of anticipated impediments, this expression is used e.g.

Kuch bhii hoo maī̃ kaar khariidū̃gaa, Let anything happen I shall buy a car (at any cost)

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

voo	*rooz*	*kitaab*	*padhaa*	*kartii*	*thii*
she	Daily	book	read	do	was

She used to read the book daily

pitaajii	*rooz*	*daudaa*	*kartee*	*thee*
Father	daily	ran	do	was

Father used to run daily

Khilaadii	*har din*	*kheelaa*	*kartee*	*thee*
Players	everyday	Played	do	were

Players used to play every day

aap	*caar*	*laakh mẽe*	*gaadii*	*beccaa*	*kartee*	*thee*
you	four	lakhs in	car	sold	do	were

You used to sell car for 4 lakhs

5. when a work is done everyday for long time this tense is used. This is called habitual (past)

   Nee rule does not apply to this form also

6. The finite verb will be in masculine singular past form irrespective of the number & gender of the subject.

7. But the auxilary verb will change according to the number & gender of the subject. It will be

   kartaa thaa M.Sg. *kartee thee* Mpl.

   kartii thii F.sg. *kartii thii* F.pl.

SUPPLEMENT

Convert the following sentence into habitual past.

1. *maī̃ kitaab padhtaa thaa*
   I was reading a book
2. *tum cinemaa deekhtee hoo*
   you sea a movie
3. *vee skuul gayee hõogee*
   They might have gone to school
4. *tum gaanaa gaatee hoo*
   you sing a song

5. *ladkii naactii hai*
Girl dances.

e.g. sentence No. 5 in habitual tense will become.
ladkii naacaa kartii hai

———o———

CYCLE - 13

Topical Focus : Future actions.

Grammatical Focus : Future tense

Interrogative : *kyaa kareengee* ?
What will you do ?

Rituals : *jaldii kiijiyee na* -
Please hurry up.

M1	*maĩ parsõo haidaraabaad-jaaũugaa*	Day after tomorrow I will go to Hyderabad
M2	*ham kal sinemaa deekheengee* -	Tomorrow we will watch a movie.
M3	*Vidyaarthiniyãa šaamkoo-naacceengii*	Girl students will dance in the evening.
M4	*meerii beehan kal citthii likheegii* -	My sister will write a letter tomorrow
M5	*aap kab haidaraabaad jaaeengee ?* -	When will you go to Hyderabad ?

M6	*ham/aap kab sinema deekheeṅgee ?*	- When will we/you watch a movie.
M7	*vidyaarthiniyā̃ śaamkoo kyaa kareeṅgii*	- What will the girl students do in the evening ?
M8	*tumhaarii behan kal kyaa-likheegii ?*	- What will your sister write tomorrow ?

C1	A	*aap kabhii haidaraa-baad gayee thee ?*	- Did you ever go to Hyderabad ?
	B	*abhii tak nahiĩ gayaa*	- So far I have not gone
	A	*kyõo nahiĩ gayee*	- Why did you not go ?
	B	*Fursat nahiĩ milii parsõo jaaũugaa*	- Did not find time, I will go day after tomorrow
C2	A	*aap kab sinema deekheeṅgee ?*	- When will you see a movie ?
	B	*ham aglee haftee deekheeṅgee*	- We will see next week
	A	*nahiĩ aglee haftee acchii-filmẽe nahiĩ raheeṅgii*	- No next week there wont be good movies.
	B	*tab too kal deekheeṅgee*	- Then we will see tomorrow
C3	A	*kal śaamkoo kaaleejmẽe-saanskritik kaaryakram hoogaa*	- Tomorrow evening there wil be cultural programe in the college.
	B	*saanskritik kaarya kram mẽe kyaa kyaa hoogaa ?*	- What (items) will be in the cultural programme?
	A	*usmẽe naaṭak gaanee aur naac hoṅgee*	- In that there will be drama songs and dance.
	B	*kaun naaceeṅgii*	- Who will dance ?
	A	*kaaleejkii vidyaarthini-yā̃ naceeṅgii*	- College girls will dance.

C4	A	*tumhaarii behan kiskoo-cit̤hii likheegii ?*	- To whom will your sister write a letter
	B	*meerii behan pitaajii koo-cit̤hii likheegii*	- My sister will write a letter to (my) father.
	A	*tumhaarii behan pitaajii-koo kab cit̤hii likheegii ?*	- When will your sister write a letter to (her) father ?
	B	*voo kal cit̤hii likheegii*	- She will write a letter tomorrow
C5	A	*Sinema kitnee baje śuruu hoogaa ?*	- At what time will the movie start
	B	*Sinema chee bajee śuruu hoogaa*	- Movie will start at 6 p.m.
	A	*oo hoo / saadhe pā̃c hoo gayaa jaldii kiijiyee na ?*	- Oh it is already 5-30 hurry up please ?

VOCABULARY

Citr	Movie
saadhee pā̃c bajee	5-30
cit̤hii	Letter
saamskritik	Cultural
kaaryakram	Programme
naac	Dance
aglee haftee	Next week
naaṭak	Drama
jaldii	(quickly)

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *maĩ* substitute *ham* we *aap* you & *vee* they and accordingly change the verb.

M2 In place of *ham* we substitute *tum* you *ladkii* girl

M3 In place of *naaceeṅgii* will dance substitute *gaa* sing *padh* read *daud* run *khaa* eat

M4 In place of *kal* substitute *kal* (past) *parsõo* (past tense) and change the verb using and following *nee rule.*

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

maĩ	*kal*	*haidaraabaad*	*jaa*	*ũũgaa*
I	tomorrow	Hyderabad	go	will

I will go to Hyderabad tomorrow

ham	*kal*	*sinema*	*deekheeṅgee*
we	tomorrow	picture	see will

We will see picture tomorrow

SUPPLEMENT

vidyarthiniyãã	*śaamkoo*	*naaceeṅgii*
Girls students	evening to	Dance will

Girl students will dance in the evening.

meerii	*behan*	*kal*	*citthii*	*likheegii*
My	sister	tomorrow	letter	write will

My sister will write (a) letter tomorrow

1. Note that in simple future tense there is no auxilary verbs like past & present tense.
2. Habitual future tense is there
   e.g. *maĩ khaanaa banaayaa karũũgaa*
   I will continue to cook food (daily)

observe the table

maĩ	*karũũgaa*	I will do
ham	*kareeṅgee*	we will do
tuu	*kareegaa/gii*	you will do (m) (f)
tum	*karoogee/gii*	you will do (m) (f)
aap	*kareeṅgee/gii*	you will do (m/f)
voo/ya	*kareegaa/gii*	He/she will do
vee/yee	*kareeṅgee/gii*	He/she they will do
kaun	*kareegaa/gii*	Who will do (m/f)
kaun	*kareeṅgee/gii*	Who all will do (m/f)

———o———

CYCLE - 14

Topical Focus : Dependent actions

Grammatical Focus : Adverbial clause of (condition) *agar* -- *too* If -- Then

Interrogative : and instrumental case *see* with, by, from, *kissee* with whom through, on account of

Rituals : *abhii abhii* - Just now

MODEL SENTENCES

M1	*agar baariṣ aayeegii too - ham baahar nahiĩ Jaa sakeengee*	If it rains, we will not be able to go outside.
M2	*agar tum kahtee too maĩ - tumhaaree ghar aataa*	If you had told, (me) I would have come to your house
M3	*agar aaj imtahaan nahiĩ - hootaa too maĩ tumhaaree saath naaṭak dekhnee*	If there had no examination, to day I would have come with you to

	aataa		(see a) drama.
M4	*agar voo biimaar nahiĩ padtiĩ too davaakhaanaa nahiĩ jaatii*	-	If she had not fallen sick, she would not have gone to clinic.
M5	*aap baahar kyõõ nahiĩ jaa sakeengee ?*	-	Why cant you go out
M6	tum meeree ghar *kyõõ nahiĩ aayee ?*	-	Why did you not come to my house ?
M7	*aaj tum meeree saath naaṭak deekhnee kyõõ nahiĩ aatee ?*	-	Why don't you come with me to see a drama ?
M8	*voo davaakhaanaa kyõõ jaatii hai ?*	-	Why does she go to clinic ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*ham baahar jaa sakeengee na ?*	-	Can we go outside ?
	B	*kyõõ nahiĩ ?*	-	Why not ?
	A	*too kab jaayengee*	-	Then when can we go ?
	B	*aagar baariṣ nahiĩ aayeegii too ham baahar jaa sakeengee*	-	If it does not rain, we can go out
C2	A	*Tum hamaree ghar kyõõ nahiĩ aayee ?*	-	Why did you not come to our house ?
	B	*tumnee kab aanee koo kahaa ?*	-	When did you ask me to come ?
	A	*Nahiĩ kahee too kyaa huaa ?*	-	If I did not say (O.K.) what if ?
	B	*agar tum kahtee too maĩ zaruur aataa*	-	If you had told me I would have certainly come.

C3	A	*aaj naaṭak deekhnee aaoogee ?*	-	Will you come to see drama to-day ?
	B	*nahiĩ aaj nahiĩ aaũṅgaa*	-	No to-day I will not come
	A	*kyõõ nahiĩ aatee ?*	-	Why dont you come ?
	B	*agar mujhee imtihaan nahiĩ hootaa too maĩ zaruur aataa*	-	If I had not the examination, I would have certainly come
C4	A	*voo kahã̃a gayii hai ?*	-	Where has she gone ?
	B	*voo ghar par nahiĩ hai*	-	She is not at home
	A	*Voo kyaa duukaan gayii hai ?*	-	Has she gone to a store ?
	B	*voo bimaar padii. agar voo biimaar nahiĩ padtii too voo davaakhaanaa nahii jaatii*	-	She has fallen sick Had she not fallen sick, she would not have gone to the clinic.

VOCABULARY

agar-too	If then
zaruurii kaam	Urgent work
baahar	Outside
baariṣ	Rain
mehmaan	Guest(s)
imtahaan	Examination
kyaa huaa	what (happened)
dekhnee	for seeing
biimaar padṇaa	To fall sick
davaakhaanaa	Clinic
sak	can

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *'baariṣaayeegii'* substitute *meerii behan* - my sister, *mehmaan* guests

M2 In place of *baahar* outside substitute *maidaan* field (play ground)

M3 In place of *tum* substitute *tumhaarii maataaji* your mother and make necessary changes.

M4 In place of *imtahaan* examination substitute *zaruurii kaam* urgent work. *mehmaan nahiĩ aatee* guest had not come, *saṅgiit kaa paaṭh* music lesson.

M5 In place of *biimaar nahiĩ paḍtii does* fall sick substitute *bukhaar nahiĩ hootaa* had she not fever *sardii nahiĩ hootii* had she not cold make necessary changes in the sentence.

LEARNERS' NOTE

abhii abhii - Just now to express certain action which took place just a few seconds are miniutes ago this is used.

kissee from where from whom from which

e.g. *tumnee kissee (kitaab) ya cunaa* ?
From which (Book) you selected this ?

usnee kissee ya siikhaa ?
from whom did he learn this.

kisnee kissee ya kitaab khãriidii ?
Who bought this book from whom ?

In this context *kahãsee* where from could also be used in place of *kissee*.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

agar	*baariṣ*	*aayeegii*	*too*	*ham*	*baahar*	*nahiĩ*	*jaa*	*sakeengee*
If	Rain	will come	then	we	outside	no/not	go	can will

If it rains, we will not be able to go out

agar	*tum*	*kahtee*	*too*	*maĩ*	*tumhaaree*	*ghar*	*aataa*
If	you	had said	Then	I	your	house	come

If you had said, I woud have come to your house

agar	*aaj*	*imtahaan*	*nahiĩ*	*hotaa*	*too*	*maĩ*
If	today	examination	not	happen	then	I

tumhaaree	*saath*	*naaṭak*	*deekhnee*	*aataa*
your	with	drama	seeing	for come

Had there not been examination to-day, I would have come with you to see drama.

agar	*voo*	*biimaar*	*nahiĩ*	*paḍtii*	*too*	*voo*
If	she	sick	Not	fall	then	she

davaakhanaa	*nahiĩ*	*jaatii*
hospital	not	go

If she had not fallen sick, she would not have gone to the hospital

SUPPLEMENT

zaruur - necessary / certainly / definitely

zaruurii - (Adjective) urgent / important

zaruurat- necessity / need

e.g *agar tum kahoogee too maĩ zaruur aaũgaa*
If you say I will definitely come

tumhee vahãã Jaaneekii zaruurat kyaa thii ?
where was the need for you to go there ?

Practise 10 sentences with adverbial clause of condition.

———o———

CYCLE - 15

Topical Focus : General dailogue in compound & complex sentences.

Grammatical Focus : Relative pronoun *Joo* with case endings.

Interrogative : *Joo* he/who, That which

Rituals : *samjhee* Did you understand?

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *vahãã joo khaḍaa hai, voo meeraa bhaaii hai* - He who is standing there, is my brother.

M2 *jisee tumnee maidaan mẽẽ deekhaa voo Jaankii kii behan hai* - Whom you saw in the field, is Janaki's sister

M3 *Joo Joo hindii nahiĩ jaantee vee aṅgreezii mẽẽ likhẽẽ* - Those who do not know Hindi may write in English

M4	*Joo tum caahtee hoo, too mai tumhaaree saath aaũgaa*	- If you like (wish) I will come with you

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*voo kaun hai ?*	- Who is he ?
	B	*voo joo khaḍaa hai ?*	- He who is standing ?
	A	*haã voo kaun hai ?*	- yes who is he ?
	B	*vahãã joo khaḍaa hai, voo meeraa bhaaii hai*	- He who is standing there (he) is my brother
C2	A	*tumnee maidaan mẽẽ kiskoo deekhaa*	- Whom did you see in the field ?
	B	*mãinee jiiskoo maidaan-mẽẽ deekhaa, usee mai nahii jaantaa*	- Whom I saw (in the field) I don't know her
	A	*voo jaanakii hai kyaa ?*	- Is she Janaki ?
	B	*jisee tumnee maidaan mẽẽ deekhaa voo Jaanakii kii behan hai*	- Whom you saw in the field, is Janaki's sister.
C3	A	*aap sab hindii jaantee hai ?*	- Do you all know Hindi ?
	B	*kuch loog hindii jaantee-hai aur kuch loog nahii jaantee*	- Some people know Hindi & some people do not know
	A	*joo hindii nahii jaantee, vee angreezii mẽẽ likh saktee hai*	- Those who do not know Hindi (they) can write in English

C4	A	*tum meeree ghar aaoo*	- You come to my house
	B	*aaj thoḍaa kaam hai, kal aaũgaa*	- To-day I have some work, I will come tomorrow
	A	*kaam kal kar saktee hoo*	- (you) can do the work tomorrow
	B	*joo tum caahtee hoo too mai aaũgaa*	- If you want I will come

VOCABULARY

Joo	If, he/she - who/they		
khaḍaa	standing	*likh*	write
jaan	know	*caah*	like/wish
thoḍaa	A little / bit		
kahaanii	story		
kuch loog	some people		
rooyee	wept		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *khaḍaa hai* standing substitute *baiṭhaa hai* sitting *sooyaa hai* - sleeping, *gaataa hai* singing.

M2 In place *maidaanmẽẽ* in the field *hooṭalmẽẽ* in the hotel, *thiyeṭar mẽẽ* in the theatre *sãadii kee gharmẽẽ* marraige house.

M3 In place of *hindii* substitute *kannaḍ* Kannada, *Tamil* Tamil *telugu* Telugu *Malayaaḷam* Malyaalam

M4 In place of *Joo* if substitute *ab* now *abhii abhii* Just now *baadmẽẽ* afterwards.

Frame similar sentences adding all case signs with relative pronoun *Joo*.

LEARNERS' NOTE

sumjhee ? - Did you understand ?
This is also used for warning, e.g. (with a harsh tone)

mai joo kahiigaa vahii karoogee
Whatever I say, you will do that understand

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

vahã	*joo*	*khaḍaa*	*hai,*	*voo*	*meeraa*	*bhaaii*	*hai*
There	who	stand	is	he	my	brother	is

He who is standing there, is my brother

Jisee	*tumnee*	*maidaan*	*mẽe*	*deekhaa*	*voo*	*jaanakii*	*kii*	*behan*	*hai*
whom	you	field	in	saw	she	Janaki	's	sister	is

Whom you saw in the field, is Janaki's sister

Joo	*Joo*	*hindii*	*nahii*	*Jaantee*	*vee*	*angreezii*	*mẽe*	*likhẽe*
who	who	Hindi	not	know	they	english	in	may write

Those who do not know Hindi, may write in English

Joo	*tum*	*caahtee hoo*	*too*	*mai*	*tumhaaree*	*saath*	*aũugaa*
If	you	like,	Then	I	your	with	will come

If you wish, I will come with you

1. *Joo* has two meanings if and as a relative pronoun he - who she - who that which those which they, who .
2. When *joo* takes a case sign it has two forms singular *Jisnee* & Plural *Joo+nee jinhoonee* observe the following chart.

Relative Pronoun	case sign	Form	meaning
Joo +	nee		
	Sg.	Pl	
Joo + nee	Jisnee	Jinhoonee	He who/she/who They who those which that which
" + *koo*	*jiskoo*	*jinkoo*	To whom
" + *see*	*Jissee*	*Jinsee*	By whom with whom
" + *mẽe*	*jismẽe*	*jinmẽe*	By which, in which in whom
" + *kaa*	*kee kii*	*jiskaa jiskee jiskii pl jinkaa jinkee jinkii*	

There is no gender difference in nominative case *Jisnee & pl jinhoonee*

SUPPLEMENT

Combine a & b sentences using the required form of *joo*

1. a *Kitaab kamree mẽe hai* e.g
   b *mai usee padhtaa hũu*
   Joo kitaab kamree mẽe hai, mai usee padhtaa hũu
2. a *unhoonee kahaanii padhii*
   b *voo kahaanii preemcand nee likhii*
3. a *kuch ladkee saaikal par aatee hai*
   b *vee jaldii skuul aatee hai*
4. a *kuch loogõonee `siimaa' film deekhii*
   b *vee rooyee*
5. a *kuch loog hindii jaantee hai*
   b *vee akhbaar padhtee hai*

———o———

CYCLE - 16

Topical Focus : Double actions simultaneously

Grammatical Focus : Repetitive verbs & simultaneous actions.

Interrogative : *kyaa kartee kartee* while doing what

Rituals : *Kar ḍaliyee* Do it away (finish off)

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *voo khaanaa khaatee khatee kahaanii paḍhtaa thaa* - He was reading a story while eating lunch/dinner

M2 *gavayyee gaatee gaate sir aur haath hilaatee haĩ* - Musicians move (their) head and hand while singing

M3 *baccee kahaanii suntee suntee soo jaatee haĩ* - Kids go to sleep listening a story

M4	*kittuur raanii cennammaa-angreezõõ kee khilaaf ladṭee ladṭee mar gayii*	Kittur Rani Chennamma died while fighting against the Britishers
M5	*voo kahaanii kyaa kartee-kartee suntaa thaa ?*	What was he doing while hearing a story ?
M6	*gavayyee gaatee vakt kyaa kyaa hilaatee hai ?* -	What do the musicians (swing) (shake) while singing.
M7	*baccee kyaa suntee suntee soo Jaatee hai ?* -	Hearing what kids go to sleep ?
M8	*angreezõõ kee khilaaf ladṭee ladṭee kaun mar gayii ?* -	Who died while fighting against the Britishers ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*voo kyaa kartaa thaa ?*	- What was he doing ?
	B	*voo khaanaa khaataa thaa*	- He was taking meal
	A	*voo khaatee khaatee kyaa kartaa thaa ?*	- While eating what was he doing ?
	B	*voo khaatee khaatee kahaanii padṭhtaa thaa*	- While eating he was reading a story.
C2	A	*gavayyee kyaa kartee hai ?*	- What do the musicians do ?
	B	*gavayyee gaatee hai*	- Musicians sing
	A	*vee gaatee gaatee kyaa-kartee hai ?*	- What do they do while singing ?
	B	*vee gaatee gaatee sir aur haath hilaatee hai*	- They swing their head & hands while singing

C3	A	*baccõõn koo kahaani bahut pasand hai vee hameeśaa kahanii sunnaa caahte hai*	- Kids love stories, Always they like to hear stories.
	B	*baccee kahaanii suntee suntee kyaa kartee hai*	- What do the kids do listening to story
	A	*vee kahaanii suntee suntee soo Jaatee hai*	- Children go to sleep while hearing the story
C4	A	*karnaaṭak kee doo viiraanganaaõõ kee naam jaantee hai ?*	- Do you know the names of two women warriors of Karnataka
	B	*haa jaantee hai*	- Yes, we know
	A	*vee kaun kaun hai ?*	- Who are they ?
	B	*vee hai onakee (muusal) oobavvaa aur kittur raani cennammaa*	- They are onake oobavva and Kittur queen Chennamma
	A	*unhoonee kyaa kiyaa ?*	- What did they do ?
	B	*doonõõ dushmanõõ kee saath ladṭee ladṭee mar gayii*	- Both of them died while fighting with (against) the enemies.

VOCABULARY

sun	Listen	*gavayyee*	Musicians
soo	sleep	*sir*	Head
soo jaanaa	go to sleep	*haath*	Hands
viiraanganaaẽ	war heroines	*hilaanaa*	swing, shake
angreez	Britishers		
khilaaf	Against	*hameeśaa*	Always
ladṭnaa	to fight	*kaii*	Many/several
raanii	Queen	*naujavaan*	youth
deeśkee neetaa	Leaders of the Country		
deeśapreemii	Partiots	*tood*	Break

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place *khaanaa khaatee, khaatee* substitute *caay piitee piitee* while drinking Tea. *ṭii vii deekhtee deekhtee* while watching TV

In place of *kahaanii* story substitute *khat* letter *upanyaas* Novel *kavitaa* poem

M2 In place of *gavayyee* musicians substitute *kalaakaar* Artists, *laḍkiyā̃* girls *auratẽẽ* women *vidyaarthii* students.

In place of *gaatee gaatee* while singing substitute *booltee booltee* while talking kaam kartee kartee while working & make appropriate changes in the verb.

M3 In place of *baccee* kids substitute *loog* people *preekṣak* Audiance *buuḍhee* old men

M4 In place of *kittur raṇii cennammaa* Kittur Queen Chennamma substitute *deeśkee neetaa* leaders of the country *kaii naujavaan* Many youths *deeśapreemii* patriots.

LEARNERS' NOTE

kar ḍaaliyee - Please do/finish (early) *ḍaal* is a productive verb which follows another finite verb to emphasise or completing the act then & there

aap	*unkaa*	*kaam*	*kaar*	*ḍaaliyee*
you	please do	his work	(immediately)	

similarly use in different sentences

padh	ḍaaliyee	Read and finish
likh	"	Write " "
dee	"	give " "
tooḍ	"	Break " "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

voo	*khaanaa*	*khaate*	*khaatee*	*kahaanii*	*paḍhtaa*	*thaa*
He	meal	eating	eating	story	reading	was

He was reading a story while eating

gavayyee	*gaatee*	*gaatee*	*sir*	*aur*	*haath*	*hilaatee*	*haĩ*
Musicians	singing	singing	head	and	hand(s)	swing	are

Musicians swing (their) head & hands while singing

baccee	*kahaanii*	*suntee*	*suntee*	*soo*	*jaatee*	*haĩ*
kids	story	listening	listening	sleep	go	are

Kids go to sleep while listening to story

kittuur	*raṇii*	*cennammaa*	*aṅgreezõokee*	*khilaaf*	*laḍee*	*laḍee*	*mar*	*gayii*
Kittur	queen	chennamma	Britishers of	against	fighting	fighting	die	went

Kittur queen chennamaa died while fighting against the Britishers.

1. Repetitive verbs normally follow the subject.
2. Repetitive verbs will always be in masculine plural form irrespecitve of the number and gender of the subject
3. It is indeclinable i.e. always in the same form.
4. When this form is used always there will be another finite verb which will determine number, gender and tense.

SUPPLEMENT

Combine the following pairs of sentences using repetitive form of verbs.

Example :-

1. *baccaa rootaa hai* Child cries
   baccaa duudh piitaa hai Child drinks milk

2. *vidyaarthii kheeltaa hai*
   Student Plays
   Paaṭh suntaa hai
   listens to the lesson

3. *mãã khaanaa pakaatii hai*
   Mother cooks meal
   mãã gaatii hai
   Mother sings

4. *kar ḍaaliyee* (pl) do (away) *maar ḍaaliyee* pl. kill (it) off
   khaa ḍaaliyee pl eat away. Use in your own sentences.

———o———

CYCLE - 17

Topical Focus	:	Reminding duties
Grammatical Focus	:	Reflexive pronoun apnaa (self)
Interrogative	:	*apnaa kaun hai ?* who is ours
Rituals	:	*apnaa koii hai* Any one to be called ours

MODEL SENTENCES

M1	*skuul kee baad sab ladkee apnee apnee ghar jaatee haĩ*	-	All the boys go to their (respective) houses after the school
M2	*rooz suba das bajee meeree pitaajii apnee dabftar mẽẽ jaatee haĩ*	-	My father goes to his office every morning at 10' o clock
M3	*ab maĩ apnaa Paaṭh likh rahaa hũũ*	-	Now I am writing my lesson
M4	*tum apnii hindii kitaab padhtii hoo*	-	You read your Hindi book

M5	*skuul kee baad ladkee kahãã jaatee hai ?*	- Where do the boys go after the school ?
M6	*rooz suba das bajee tumhaaree pitaajii kahãã jaatee hai ?*	- Every morning at 10'0' clock where does your father go ?
M7	*ab tum kyaa likh rahee hoo ?*	- What are you writing now ?
M8	*tum kiskii hindii kitaab padhtii hoo*	- Whose Hindi book are you reading now ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*skuul kitnee bajee band-hootaa hai ?*	At what time does the school close ?
	B	*skuul caar bajee band hootaa hai*	- School closes at 4 p.m.
	A	*caar bajee ladkee kahãã jaatee hai ?*	- Where do the boys go at 4 'o' clock
	B	*caar bajee see pãc bajee tak haiskuul kee maidaan mẽẽ kheeltee hai*	- From 4 to 5 p.m. (they) play in the High school (sports) field.
	A	*uskee baad kyaa kartee-hai ?*	What will they do afterwards ?
	B	*uskee baad ladkee apnee apnee ghar jaatee hai*	- After that boys go to their houses.
C2	A	*tumhaaree pitaajii kahãã kaam kartee hai ?*	- Where does your father work ?
	B	*vee aaykarkee daftarmẽẽ kaam kartee hai*	- He works in Income Tax office.

	A	*vee rooz kitnee bajee apnaa daftar Jaatee hai ?*	- Daily at what time does he go to his office
	B	*vee rooz suba das bajee-apnaa daftar jaatee hai*	Every (day) morning at 10 'O' clock, he goes to his office.
C3	A	*ab tum kyaa kartee hoo ?*	- What do you do now ?
	B	*ab mai likh rahãã hũũ*	- Now I am writing
	A	*ab tum kyaa likh rahee hoo ?*	- What are you writing now ?
	B	*ab mai apnaa paath likh rahaa hũũ*	- Now I am writing my lesson.
C4	A	*tum kyaa kartii hoo ?*	- What do you do ?
	B	*mai padh rahii hũũ*	- I am reading.
	A	*tum kyaa padh rahii hoo ?*	- What are you reading ?
	B	*mai kitaab padh rahii hũũ*	- I am reading the book.
	A	*tum kaunsii kitaab padh-rahii hoo ?*	What book are you reading ?
	B	*mai apnii hindii kitaab padh rahii hũũ*	- I am reading my Hindi book

VOCABULARY

apnaa	my, our, her, his, their	
apnee	"	"
apnii	"	"
band hoonaa	closes	
kaunsii	Which one (F)	
kitaab	Book	

ghar	House		
skuulkee baad	After school		
kheelkee baad	After Play		
daftar	office	*ladaaii*	war
see	from -- to	*goolii*	Bullet
aaykar	Income Tax	*deekh*	see
sab	All	*khariid*	Buy
uskee baad	After that		
saṅgiit	Music		
saadhee nau bajee	9-30		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *skuulkee baad* after school substitute *kasrat karnee kee baad* after doing exercise *saṅgiit sunneekee baad* After listening music *naatak deekhnee kee baad* after seeing drama.

In place of *sab ladkee* All boys substitute *sab ladkiyãã* All girls *sub loog* - All people

M2 In place of *das bajee* 10 'o' clock substitute *saadhee nau bajee* - 9.30 *saadhee das bajee* at 10.30

In place of *meeree pitaajii* my father substitute *meerii behan* my sister *tuumhaarii maataajii* your mother *unkee bhaaii* His brother

M3 In place of *maĩ* I substitute *tum* you *vee* they and accordingly change the form of the verb. In place of *paath* lesson substitute *citthii* Letter *Prabhandh* essay *kavitaa* poem & make necessary changes.

M4 In place of *tum* substitute other pronouns and make necessary changes in the axilary verbs. In place of *padhtii* read substitute *deekhtii* see *khariidtii* Buy *deetii* give *leetii* take.

LEARNERS' NOTE

apnaa koii hai - Is there any one for me ? When a person is in trouble and nobody comes to his aid this expression is used

e.g. *ladaaii mẽe goolii khaakar sipaahii dam tood rahaa thaa tab kahtaa hai 'aree apnaa kooii hai'?* When a soldier is dying in the war having received a bullet he shouts, Is there any one of ours (to help me)

apnaa my / our / your / his / her / their

apnee If the noun that follows apnaa Is masculine sg,

apnee If it, masculine plural
apnii If it, Feminine singular & plural

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

apnaa is a reflexive pronoun meaning self / selves

When a noun or a pronoun is used as subject means is in nominative case and in the same sentence if the subject comes in the possessive form apnaa is used

maĩ	*apnaa*	*apnee*	*apnii*	I	my
ham	"	"	"	We	our
tuu	"	"	"	You	your
tum	"	"	"	You	your
aap	"	"	"	You	Your
voo	"	"	"	He / she	
vee	"	"	"	it / Her / His He / she / they its / Her / His their	

kaun " " " who - his / her their

apnaa

skuulkee	*baad*	*sab*	*ladkee*	*apnee*	*apnee*	*ghar*	*Jaatee*	*haĩ*
school	after	all	boys	their	their	house	go	are

After the school all boys go to their (respective) houses.

rooz	*suba*	*meeree*	*pitaaji*	*das*	*bajee*	*apnee*
Daily	morning	my	father	10	'o' clock	his

daftar	*mẽe*	*Jaatee*	*haĩ*
office	in	go	are

My father goes to his office every day at 10 'o' clock in the morning

ab	*maĩ*	*apnaa*	*paath*	*likh*	*rahaa*	*hũu*
now	I	my	lesson	write	ing	am

Now I am writing my lesson

tum	*apnii*	*hindii*	*kitaab*	*padhtii*	*hoo*
you	your	Hindi	Book	read	are

You read your Hindi Book

SUPPLEMENT

Practise Ten sentences using all the pronouns and few nouns with *apnaa - apnee & apnii*

CYCLE - 18

Topical Focus : Commands

Grammatical Focus : Infinitive & Imperative moods

Interrogative : *kaunsii badii baat hai ?* What a big deal ?

Rituals : *nau doo gyaara hoona* run away

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *tumhee aaj hii bambaii jaanaa hai* - You have to go to Bombay to day alone.

M2 *kailaas koo das rupyee laanaa padeegaa* - Kailash to (must) bring ten rupees.

M3 *badhaii koo tiin dinõo mẽe darvaaza banaanaa caahiyee* - Carpenter must make a door within three days.

M4 *aapkoo hii bagiicee kaa kaam karnaa hoogaa* - You alone have to do the garden work.

M5	*mujhee kab bambaii jaanaa hoogaa ?*	- When should I go to Bombay ?
M6	*kailaskoo kyaa laanaa hoogaa ?*	- What should Kailash bring ?
M7	*badhaii koo kitnee dinõo mẽe darvaazaa banaanaa caahiyee ?*	- In how many days should the carpenter make the door ?
M8	*bagiicee mẽe kiskoo kaam karnaa hoogaa*	- Who must work in the garden ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*tum jaantee hoo aaj tumhee kahã̃a jaanaa hai ?*	- Do you know where you have to go today?
	B	*mai nahii jaantaa, tum bataaoo*	- I don't know, you tell me.
	A	*tumkoo bambaii jaanaa hai*	- You have to go to Bombay.
	B	*kab jaanaa hai ?*	- When should I go ?
	A	*kal jaanaa hai*	- Tomorrow you have to go
	B	*kyõo parsõo nahii jaa saktaa ?*	- Why ? cant I go day after tomorrow ?
	A	*nahii kal hii jaanaa hai*	- No no, tomorrow alone you must go
C2	A	*kailaas nee kyaa kiyaa?*	- What did Kailas do ?
	B	*usnee prayoogsaalaa mẽe eek gilaas tood daalaa*	- He broke a glass in the Laboratory.
	A	*uskee liyee kyaa karnaa hai ?*	- What should he do far that ?
	B	*uskee liyee jurmaanaa deenaa padeega*	- He has to pay fine for that.

	A	*kitnaa deenaa padeegaa ?*	- How much he has to pay ?
	B	*uskoo das rupyee laanaa padeegaa*	- He has to bring ten rupees.
C3	A	*lakdiikaa kaam kaun kartaa hai ?*	- Who does wood work ?
	B	*badhaii lakdii kaa kaam kartaa hai*	- Carpenter does the wood work.
	A	*aapkee ghar mẽe kooii kaam hai ?*	- Is there any work in your house ?
	B	*hã̃a eek darvaazaa banaanaa hai*	- Yes one door is to be made
	A	*mai eek badhaii koo jaantaa hũu voo banaa deegaa*	- I know one carpenter, he will do it
	B	*badhaii koo tiin dinkee andar darvaazaa banaanaa caahiyee*	- Carpenter must make the door within three days.
C4	A	*tumhaaraa bagiicaa acchaa hai*	- Your garden is good.
	B	*bahut acchaa nahii hai thiik hai*	- Not very good o.k.
	A	*bagiicee mẽe kaun kaam kareegaa ?*	- Who will work in the garden ?
	B	*kooii nahii kareegaa mujhkoo hii karnaa hoogaa*	- No body will do. I myself must do.

VOCABULARY

Nau doo gyaara hoonaa	to run away
laa	bring
badhaii	Carpenter

darvaazaa	Door
lakḍii	Wood
banaanaa	To make
kee andar	within
paḍ	has/have to must
caahiyee	want have/has to
toodṛ	break
jurmaanaa	fine
parsõõ	Day after tomorrow / day before yesterday
vasuul karnaa	Collect
Khidkii	Window
almaarii	Cupboard
peeṭii	Box
ghar kaa kaam	Household work
rasooii	Cooking (food)
naukar	Servant
pulis	Police
Coor	Thief
Tairnaa	Swimming
seehat	Health
ghaaṭaa Paḍnaa	To incur loss

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *tumhee* (to) you substitute *usee* him/her *mujhkoo* me *kinkoo* to whom and observe that no change takes place in verb *jaanaa hoogaa.*

M2 In place of *laanaa paḍeegaa* has to bring/must bring substitute *deenaa paḍeegaa* must give *vasuul karnaa paḍeegaa* must collect *bharnaa paḍeegaa* should remit

M3 In place of darvaazaa door substitute *peeṭii* box *almaarii* cup Board *khidkii* window

M4 In place of *bagiicee kaa kaam* garden work, substitute *gharkaa kaam* house hold work *rasooii kaa kaam* cooking (work) *nauakr kaa kaam* servant job.

1. *Caahiyee, naa, paḍ hoogaa* will follow another verb and give the imperative meaning. When these verbs come in a sentence subject will always take the dative case sign.

LEARNERS' NOTE

nau doo gyaara hoonaa - is an idiom meaning seeing something causing trouble run away e.g. puliis koo *deekh kar coor nau doo gyaara hoo gayaa.* seeing the police theif ran away.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

tumhee	*aaj hii*	*bambaii*	*jaanaa*	*hai*
to you	to-day alone	Bombay	to go	is

You have to go to Bombay to-day itself.

kailaaskoo	*das*	*rupyee*	*laanaa*	*paḍeegaa*
Kailas to	ten	rupees	bring	will have to

Kailas has to bring ten rupees

badhaiikoo	*tiin*	*dinõo*	*mẽe*	*darvaazaa*	*banaanaa*	*caahiyee*
Carpenter to	three	day	in	door	make	has to

Carpenter has to make the door in three days.

aapkoo	*hii*	*bagiicee kaa*	*kaam*	*karnaa*	*hoogaa*
you to	only	garden's	work	do	may

You alone have to do the garden work.

1. Whenever *caahiyee* comes subject takes the dative case sign koo
2. *Caahiyee* normally preceeds another finite verb.
3. Some times *caahiyee* follows noun then the meaning of *caahiyee* will be need or want.
4. *Pad* also has other meaning. When it follows a noun or an adjective e.g. is *kaam mẽe ghaaṭaa padtaa hai* will incur loss in this work
5. When a verb takes *naa* and comes in the end of a sentence, it gives the imperative sense e.g. *tumhee vahãa jaanaa hai you have to go there (no choice)* But if it comes in place of subject it will become a verbal noun e.g. *tairnaa seehat kee liyee acchaa hai* - Swimming is good for health.
6. If *nee* is added to the root of the verb it becomes purposive *tum khaanee hooṭel jaaoo* you go to hotel for eating.

Dative case has two forms for all the pronouns. Form sentences.

SUPPLEMENT

Observe the two forms of Dative case signs with all the pronouns & form sentences of your own.

maĩ	I	*mujhee*	*mujhkoo*	To me
ham	we	*hamẽe*	*hamkoo*	To us
tuu	you	*tujhee*	*tujhkoo*	to you
tum	you	*tumhee*	*tumkoo*	to you
aap	you	-	*aapkoo*	to you
voo	He/she/it	usee	*uskoo*	To him/her/that
ya	"		*isee, iskoo*	" " "
vee	*unhẽe*		*unkoo*	To him/her/Them Those
kaun	who		*kisee, kiskoo*	to whom
"	"		*kinhẽe, kinkoo*	To whom (all)

———o———

CYCLE - 19

Topical Focus : Narration of actions or events.

Grammatical Focus : Compound sentences with conjunctive *ki*

Interrogative : *kiskee sahaare* on whose /what support

Rituals : *ab samjhaa* Now I understood
eekaadh - a few

MODEL SENTENCES

M1	*mukhya mantrii nee kahaa- ki raajkumaar bahut acchee kalaakar hai*	Chief minister said that Rajkumar is a very good Artist.
M2	*maastar nee kahaa ki rameeš bahut hoošiyaar vidyaarthii hai* -	Master said that Ramesh is a very intelligent student.
M3	*Pitaaji nee kahaa ki "mãi kal bambaii jaaũgaa* -	Father said that "I will go to Bombay tomorrow".

M4	*neetaaõo nee kahaa ki "bhagat siṅg baḍee kraantikaarii deeśapreemii thee*	-	Leaders said that (Martyr) Bhagat sing was a great revolutionary Patriot.
M5	*Mukhya mantrii nee raajkumaar kee baaree mẽe kyaa kahaa ?*	-	What did the Chief Minister say about Rajkumar?
M6	*kisnee kahaa ki "rameeś bahut hoośiyaar vidyaarthii hai ?*	-	Who said that Ramesh is a very intelligent student?
M7	*Kisnee kahaa ki "maĩ kal-bambaii jaaũgaa ?*		Who said that " I will go to Bombay tomorrow"?
M8	*neetaaõo nee kyaa kahaa ?*	-	What did the leaders say ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*raajkumaar kaun haĩ ?*	-	Who is Rajkumar ?
	B	*vee baḍee kalaakaar haĩ*	-	He is a great Artist.
	A	*vee kis raajy kee haĩ ?*	-	Which state does he belong to ?
	B	*vee karṇaaṭak raajy kee haĩ*	-	He belongs to Karnatak State
	A	*mukhya mantrii nee unkee baaree mẽe kyaa kahaa ?*	-	What did the Chief Minister say about him?
	B	*mukhya mantrii nee kahaa ki raajkumaar bahut baḍẽe kalaakaar haĩ*	-	Chief Minsiter said that Rajkumar is a very great Artisit.

C2	A	*skuul mẽe eekaadh vidyaarthii bahut hoośiyaar haĩ*	-	There are a few very intelligent (smart) students in the school.
	B	*unmẽe sabsee hoośiyaar kaun hai ?*	-	Who is the most intelligent among them ?
	A	*unmẽe rameeś sabsee zyaadaa hoośiyaar vidyaarthii hai*	-	Among them, Ramesh is the most intelligent student.
	B	*aisaa kisnee kahaa ?*	-	Who said so ?
	A	*maasṭar nee kahaa ki rameeś bahut hoośiyaar-vidyaarthii hai*	-	Master said that "Ramesh is the most intelligent student."
C3	A	*tumhaaree pitaajii kahã-jaaeeṅgee ?*	-	Where will your father go ?
	B	*vee bambaii jaaeeṅgee*	-	He will go to Bombay.
	A	*vee kab jaaeeṅgee*	-	When will he go ?
	B	*unhoonee kal kahaa ki "maĩ kal bambaii jaaũgaa*	-	Yesterday he said that he would go to Bombay tomorrow
C4	A	*tumlogõonee bhagatsiṅg kaa naam sunaa hai ?*	-	Have you guys heard the name of Bhagat sing ?
	B	*nahii hamnee nahii sunnaa hai*	-	No we haven't heard.
	A	*vee baḍee kraantikaarii thee*	-	He was a great revolutionary
	B	*unhoonee kyaa kiyaa ?*	-	What did he do ?
	A	*unhoonee deeśkii aazaadii kee liyee apnii jaan kurban kar dii*	-	For the freedom of India he sacrificed his life.
	B	*ya sab kaisee maaluum huaa ?*	-	How was this known (to us)
	A	*badee neetaaõo nee kahaa-ki bhagat sing badee kraantikaarii deeśabhakt thee*	-	Great leaders said that Bhagatsing was a great revolutionary patriot.

VOCABULARY

ki	that / or	*janapriy*	Popular
hoōsiyaar	Smart	*samajhdaar*	Learned
deeś	Country	*mazbuut*	Well built
aazaadii	Freedom	*balvaan*	Strong person
jaan	Life	*aglee haftee*	Next week
kurbaan karnaa	To sacrifice		
neetaa	Leader/s	*mahiinee*	Months
kraantikaarii	Revolutionary	*saal*	Year
raajyapaal	Governor	*gariib*	Poor
kalaa preemii	Art lover	*bhaag*	run
sajjan	Gentleman		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *mukhyamantrii nee* substitute *loogōō nee* people *raajyapaal* nee Governor *kalaa preemiyōō nee* Art lovers.

In place of *Kalaakaar* Artist substitute *gaayak* - singer *naṭ*-Actor *sajjan* gentleman *janapriy* popular.

M2 In place of *Rameeś* substitute boys and girls names.

In place of *hoōsiyaar* smart substitute *samajhdaar* learned *mazboot* well built *balvaan* strong person.

M3 In place of *kal* tomorrow substitute *parsōō* day after tomorrow, *aglee mahiinee* next month *aglee saal* next year.

M4 In place of *neetaaōō nee* Leaders substitute *loogōōnee* people *maasṭarnee* master *caacaajiinee* uncle. In place Bhagat sing substitute other patriots like Tilak, Gaandhi, Nehru etc., If you know the names,

ki means that which occurs after the Principal clause before the commencement of the subordinate clause.

LEARNERS' NOTE

ab samjhaa - Now I understood. When a person has one opinion about another person and some event will force him to change his opinion this expression is used e.g.

maī ab tak samajhtaa thaa ki I was till now thinking that you are *tum badee sajjan hoo leekin* pious man but now I understood *ab tumhaaraa aslii ruup samjhaa* your real form.

kii also has two meaning e.g. *uskii kitaab kahāā hai ?*
Where is his book Here kii is / of
mainēē ussee baatēē nahii kii
I did not speak to him
kii is the feminine form of kiyaa
Here baat karnaa means to talk, *baat* being feminine in past tense it becomes *baatēē kii.*

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

mukhya	*mantriinee*	*kahaa*	*ki*	*raajkumaar*	*bahut*
Chief	Minister	said	that	Rajkumar	very
acchee	*kalaakaar*	*hai*			
good	artist	is			

Chief Minister said that Rajkumar is a very good Artist

maasṭarnee	*kahaa*	*ki*	*rameeś*	*bahut*	*hoōsiyaar*
Master	said	that	Ramesh	very	intelligent
vidyaarthii	*hai*				
student	is				

Master said that Ramesh is a very intelligent student.

pitaajiinee	*kahaa*	*ki*	*maĩ*	*kal*	*bambaii*	*jaaũugaa*
Father	said	that	I	tomorrow	Bombay	will go

Father said that "I will go to Bombay tomorrow."

neetaaõonee	*kahaa*	*ki*	*bhagat*	*sing*	*eek*	*badee*
Leaders	said	that	Bhagat	sing	one	great
kraantikaarii	*deeśabhakt*	*thee*				
revolutionary	patriot	was				

Leaders said that Bhagat sing was a great revolutionary Patriot

ki is a conjunctive which combines two sentences.

ki has also another meaning 'or'

e.g. *tum aaoogee ki nahiĩ ?*
will you come or not ?

while using such expression normally voice will be rised.

SUPPLEMENT

Combine the following sentences

1) *maĩnee soocaa* 2) *maĩ maisuur jaaũũ maĩnee soocaa ki maisuur jaaũũ*

I 1. *unhoonee deekhaa*
2. *vahãã caar ladkiyãã naac rahii thiĩ*

II 1. *humnee sunaa*
2. *himaalay kee paas dusman aayee haĩ*

III 1. *kisnee samjhaa ?*
2. *hamaaraa deeś gariib hai ?*

IV 1. *Pulis nee deekhaa*
2. *coor bhaag rahaa thaa*

———o———

CYCLE - 20

Topical Focus : Reasoning for actions

Grammatical Focus: Adverbial clause of reason with the use of kyoonki *cũũki* because

Interrogative : *Kis Kaaran see on account of* What reason

Ritual *Kyaa vaja hai*- What for (What reason)

Model Sentences :

M 1. *maĩ nee aaj paath nahiĩ padhaa kyõoki mujhee bukhaar thaa* - I did not read the lesson to-day because I had fever.

M 2. *ladkee kheelnee nahiĩ gayee kyõoki barriṣ hoo rahii thii.* - Boys did not go to play because it was raining.

M 3. *aajsee das din maĩ kheelnee nahiĩ aaũũgaa kyõoki mujhee aglee haftee imtahaan hai.* - I wont come to play for ten days from to-day. because next week I have examination.

M 4.	*cũhki daam bahut zyaada hai, isliyee mainee seeb nahiĩ khariidaa*	Because Apple is very expensive therefore I did not buy.
M 5.	*cũhki voo daanii hai isliyee usee sab caahtee haĩ*	Because he is a donor therefore all people like him.
M 6.	*tumnee aaj paaṭh kyõõ nahiĩ padhaa?* -	Why did you not read the lesson to-day?
M 7.	*ladkee kheelneee kyõõ nahiĩ gayee ?* -	Why did the boys not go to play (for playing)
M 8.	*aajsee kitnee din tum kheelnee nahiĩ aaoogee aur kyõõ?* -	How many days from to-day you wont come for playing and why?
M 9.	*tumnee seeb kyõõ nahiĩ khariidaa?*	Why did you not buy the apple?
M 10.	*usee sab loog kyõõ caahtee haĩ?*	Why all people like him?

CONVERSATIONS

C1A	*tum kaise hoo ?* -	How are you ?
B	*tabiiyat kharrab hai* -	My health is not good.
A	*kyõõ kyaa huaa?* -	Why, what happened?
B	*mujhee kal see bukhaar hai* -	I have fever since yesterday.
A	*kal tumnee paaṭh padhaa?* -	Did you read the lesson yesterday?
B	*nahiĩ mãnee kal paaṭh nahiĩ padhaa kyõõ ki bukhaar thaa* -	No, I did not read the lesson yesterday because I had fever
C2A	*ladkee ab bhii skuul mẽẽ kyõõ haĩ?* -	Why boys are still in the school?

B	*vee kheelnee nahiĩ gayee* -	They did not go for play.
A	*vee kheelnee kyõõ nahiĩ gayee?* -	Why did they not go for playing?
B	*vee kheelnee nahiĩ gayee kyõõki baaris hoo rahii thii* -	They did not go for play because it was raining.
C4A	*aglee haftee maic hai tum kheelnee nahiĩ jaatee?* -	Next week there is match and are you not going to play?
B	*maĩ is baar maic mẽẽ nahiĩ kheelũũgaa* -	No, This time I wont play in the match.
A	*kyõõ?*	Why?
B	*mujhee agleee haftee imtahaan hai, isliyee maĩ aaj see das din nahiĩ kheelũũgaa* -	Next week I have examination, therefore I wont paly for ten days from to-day.
C5A	*tum seeb nahiĩ laayee.* -	You did not bring apple.
B	*nahiĩ laayaa* -	Did not bring.
A	*kyõõ nahiĩ laayee?* -	Why did you not bring?
	maĩ nee kahaa thaa na ?	Had I not told you ?
B	*cũũki daam bahut zyaadaa thaa isliyee nahiĩ laayaa* -	Because the price was very high, therefore I did not bring.
C6A	*vee kaun haĩ?* -	Who is he ?
B	*vee raajmoohan haĩ?* -	He is Mr. Rajmohan.
A	*vee kyaa kartee haĩ?* -	What does he do ?
B	*unkee paas bahut paisaa haĩ* -	He has plenty of money.
A	*vee karte kyaa haĩ?* -	What does he do?
B	*vee saaraa paisaa daan kartee haĩ* -	He gives all money for charity

A *tabhii too sab loog unhee caahtee hai cũũki vee daan kartee hai isliyee sab loog unhee* caahtee *hai* - That's why all people like him Because he does lot of charity there fore all people like him.

VOCABULARY

Kyõki / *cũũ ki* } Because
aglee haftee -Next week
daam -Cost/ Price
Zyaada -too much/ more
daanii -Donor
seeb -Apple
bukhaar -Fever
maic -Match
Jukaam -cold
Peet dard -Stomache ache
sirdard -Headache
dastaa -loose motion
dhuup -Hot sun
aanndhii -Storm
dauraa -Tour
bhuukh -Hunger
dhoobii -Wahserman
dhulee kapdee- Washed clothes
pariiksaa - Examination
uttiirn - Pass.

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *bukhaar*- fever, substitute *jukaam*- cold, *sirdard* -headache *peetdard*-stomache pain, *dastaa*- loose motion.

M2 In place of *Imtahaan* examination substitute *apnii behankii šaadii hai* - Sister's marriage is there
dauree par jaanaa hai have to go on tour

M3 In place of *baarš hoo rahii thii* It was raining
bahut dhuup thii very hot (sun)
aãdhii cal rahii thii. storm was blowing

M4 In place of *seeb* apple substitute
aam - mango, *anguur* -grapes, *kaajuu*-cashew nuts

LEARNER'S NOTE :

Kyaa vaja hai ? What is the reason?

Tone plays an important role in this e.g. *mai nee uskee liyee bahut kuch kiyaa, kyaa vaja hai, ki usnee mujhee dhookhaa diyaa.* I did so much for him but (still) what is the reason for which he deceived me.

Normally final *h* in the words will be silent. It is not pronounced but in writing it is a must for e.g.

ya (w) yah (s) suba (w) subah
voo (w) vah (s) vaja (w) vajah

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

1) Meticulously observe the difference between *Kyõki* & *cũũki* and practise

2) *Kyõki* comes after the principal clause and before the commencement of subordinate clause (Normally Adverbial clause of reason) whereas *cũũki* comes in the beginning of a sentence followed by subordinate clause and then principal clause follows for e.g.

1) *ham ghanṭii bajnee par bhii ghar nahiĩ gayee kyõki maastar nee ghar janeekii anumati nahiĩ dii thii.*

We did not go home even after the bell rang because Master had not given permission to go home.

2) *cũũki maastarnee anumati nahiĩ dii thii isliyee ghanṭii bajnee par bhii ham ghar nahiĩ gayee*

Because master had not given permission therefore even though bell rang we did not go home.

tumnee	*aaj*	*paaṭh*	*kyõo*	*nahiĩ*	*paḍhaa ?*
you	today	lesson	why	not	read

Why did you not read the lesson today?

laḍkee	*kheelnee*	*kyõo*	*nahiĩ*	*gayee?*
Boys	playing for	why	not	went?
Why did the boys not go for playing?				

aajsee		*das*	*din*	*maĩ*	*kheelnee*	*nahiĩ*
Today from		ten	days	I	play for	not
aaũũ	*gaa*	*kyõki*	*mujhee*	*aglee*	*haftee*	
come	will	because	for me	next	week	
imtahaan	*hai*					
examination	is					

I wont come for playing for ten days from today because I have examination next week.

cũũki	*daam*	*zyaadaa*	*hai*	*isliyee*	*maĩnee*
Because	price	much	is	therefore	I
seeb	*nahiĩ*	*khariidaa*			
apple	not	bought			

I did not buy apple because, it is very costly.

SUPPLEMENT

Combine the following pairs of sentence by using *kyõo ki* & *cũũ ki* at appropriate places.

I 1) *maĩ abhii khaaũũgaa,* I will eat just now.
mujhee bahut bhuukh hai I am very hungry.

II 1) *tumhee dhoobii kee* You have to go
pass jaanaa hoogaa to the washerman.

2) *meeree paas* I dont have
dhulee kapḍee nahiĩ haĩ washed clothes

III 1) *raghu raat baara bajee tak paḍheegaa*
Raghu will read till 12 'O' clock.

2) *kal uskii pariikṣaa hai*
Tomorrow is his examination.

IV 1) *voo jileebii khaataa hai* He eats jilebi
voo miiṭhaa khaanaa caahataa hai
He likes to eat sweet

V 1) *usnee acchii tarah nahiĩ paḍhaa*
He did not study well

2) *voo uttiirṇ nahiĩ hoo sakaa*
He could not pass

———o———

UNIT

3

(CYCLE 21 to 30)

CYCLE - 21

Topical Focus : Approximate quantity or indefinite quantity

Grammatical Focus : Use of *kooiĩ-Any, Kuch -a few*

Interrogative : *Kis Kisnee* who are (the selected few)

Ritual : *jahãã caah hai vahãã raah hai* Where there is a will, there is a way

MODEL SENTENCES :

M 1. *hamaaree paas kiraayee kee liyee kaii acchii gaadiyãã haĩ* -We have several good vehicles for hire(cars).

M 2. garmii kee liyee vaataanu *kuul gaadiyãã bhii kaii haĩ* - We also have several Air conditioned cars for summer (heat).

M 3. *hamaarii kampanii mẽẽ kaii caalak haĩ* -There are many drivers in our company.

M 4. *unmẽẽ see kuch loog too badee anubhavii haĩ* Among them a few(drivers) are very much experienced.

M 5. *aapkee paas kiraayee kee liyee kooii acchii gaadii hai?*

Do you have a good vehicle for hire?

M 6. *garmii mẽe safar karnee kee liyee kyaa hai ?*

What vehicle do you have to travel during summer ?

M 7. *aapkii kampanii mẽe acchee caalak haĩ ?*

Are There good drivers in your Company?

M 8. *kuch tajurbeedaar bhii haĩ ?*

Are There (well) experienced (drivers) also ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1A. *hamẽe aagraa janna hai-*	We have to go to Agra
app kee paas kooii gaadii hai kiraayee kee liyee?	Do you have any car for hire?
B. *zaruur zaruur*	Certainly (why not)
aap kitnee loog haĩ ?	How many (persons) are you?
A. *ham caar loog haĩ*	We are four people.
B. *tab too ambaasidar kaar lee liijiyee*	Then you please take an ambassador car.
C2A. *yahãã (dillii) see aagraa jaanee kee liyee dhaaii ghanṭee caahiyee?*	From here to Agra it takes two and half hours.
B. *hãã hãã dhaaii ghanṭee caahiyee.*	Yes 2½ hours required.
garmii bhii bahut hai	It is very hot.
aapkoo maĩ vaataanu-kuul gaadii dũgaa	I will give you an aircon-ditioned vehicle.
C3 A. *hamaaree liyee eek acchee caalak koo bheejiyee joo śaraab nahii piitaa hoo*	(You) please send a good driver who does not drink liquor.

B. *hamaaree paas kaii acchee caalak haĩ*	There are several very good drivers in our company.
unmẽe see eek koo	I will send one among them.
bheejũugaa hamaarii kampanii mẽe kooii nahii piitaa	No body drinks in our company.
A. *hamkoo eek anubhavii caalak caahiyee*	We want an experienced driver.
B. *hamaaree yahãã biis saal see saat caalak kaam kar rahee haĩ*	There are seven drivers with us who are working for the past twenty years.
unmẽe see eek koo bheejũugaa.	I will send one among them.
C5A. *tumnee vallabh bhaaii paṭeel kaa naam sunaa hoogaa.*	You might have heard the name of Vallabh bhaaii patel.
B. *naam too sunaa hai leekin adhik nahii jaantaa.*	I have heard the name but dont know much.
A. *unkoo faulaadii aadmii kahtee thee*	He was called the steel man
B. *kyõo*	Why?
A. *kyõonki vee joo caahtee thee, usee karkee dikhaatee thee*	Because whatever he wanted, he used to do it and show.
B. *aisii baat hai ?*	Is it so ?
A. *hãã unkaa naaraa thaa jahãã caah hai vahãã raah hai*	His slogan was where there is a will there is a way.

VOCABULARY

Caalak	Driver	*bheejnaa*	To send
dhaaii	2½	*śaraab*	Liquor
ghanṭee	hours	*naaraa*	slogan
unmẽe see	from among them	*gumaāstee*	clerks
		adhikaarii	officers
jahãa	where there	*foulaadii*	steel(Iron)
caah	will	*gariib*	poor
raah	way	*garmii*	summer (Hot sun)

vaataanukuul	Air conditioned
anubhavii	experienced
safar	Travel
kee yahãa	With /near

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1. In place of *kiraayee kee liyee* for rent substitute *beecnee kee liyee* for selling. *khariidnee kee liyee* for buying. In place of *acchii gaadi* good car substitute *badi gaadi* -big car, *saaf gaadi*-clean car etc.,

M2. In place of *garmii kee liyee* for summer (heat) *sardii kee liyee* for cold *baariśkee liyee* for rain *ãadhii kee liyee* for storm.

M3. *kaii caalak*- Many drivers substitute *kaii karmacaarii*- many workers, *gumaãstee* -clerks, *adhikaarii*-officers.

LEARNER'S NOTE

jahãa caah hai vahãa raah hai - Where there is a will, there is a way.

'Kiskisnee' who among many. When a selected few things / persons have done some work this expression is used.

When many people are to be singled out among too many *kinkin loogõo nee* is used (who are all)

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

hamaaree	*paas*	*kiraayee*	*kee liyee*
our	near	rent	for

kaii	*acchii*	*gaadyãa*	*haĩ*
Many	good	vehicles	are

We have several good cars for hire

garmii	*kee liyee*	*vaataanukuul*	*gaadiyãa*	*bhii*	*kaii*	*haĩ*
summer	for	Air conditioned	cars	also	many	are

For summer -there are several air conditioned vehicles.

hamaarii	*kampanii*	*mẽe*	*kaii*	*caalak*	*haĩ*
our	company	in	many	drivers	are

There are many drivers in our company

unmẽe	*see*	*kuch*	*loog*	*too*	*badee*	*anubhavii*	*haĩ*
From	among them	a few	people	then	great	experienced	are

Among them a few are well experienced.

kooii - is a distributive pronoun singular personal or impersonal nouns.

kaii - Many indefinite personal & impersonal plural nouns.

SUPPLEMENT

Write Ten sentences so as to bring out the difference in meaning *kisii, kinhii, kooii, kuch* & *kaii* for eg.

ya baat kisii koo maaluum nahii
This matter is not known to any body.

vahãa kuch loog gariib haĩ
There are a few poor people.

kamree mẽe kooii haĩ?
Is there any one in the room?

hamaaree gãav mẽe kaiyõo koo bukhaar hai
Many have fever in our village.

CYCLE - 22

Topical Focus : Complete actions

Grammatical Focus : Intensifier productive verbs *Jaa, padh, lee, uth, dee, daal baith*

Interrogative : *kyaa kar loogee-* (After all) what can you do (for me)

Ritual : *kiyee binaa* without doing

MODEL SENTENCES :

M1. *voo khaana choodkar calaa gayaa* - He gave up eating and went away.

M2. *baccaa siidhii see gir padaa* - Child fell(down) from the step/stair case

M3. *ussee puuchee binaa tumnee uskaa kapdaa lee liyaa* - Without asking him, you took away his clothes.

M4. *voo ant sant bool utha* - He said all sorts of things (non sense)

M5. *ladkee nee das minat mẽe paath padh daalaa* - Boy read (completed) the lesson in ten minutes.

M6. *voo kuch na kuch galat kaam kar baiṭhtii hai* - She (always) does some wrong thing or the other.

M7. *voo kyaa choodḳar calaa gayaa?* - He went away giving up what ?

M8. *baccaa kahãã see gir paḍaa?* - Where did the child fall from ?

M9. *puuchee binaa tumnee (uskaa) kyaa lee liyaa?* - Without asking what did you knock off (from him)

M10. *voo kyaa bool uṭhaa* ? - What did he blirt out?

M11. *voo kyaa kar baiṭhii* ? - What did she do(away)

CONVERSATIONS

C1A. *moohan kahãã gayaa?* - Where did Mohan go ?

B. *maaluum nahiĩ* - Dont know

A. *uskii mãã nee kuch kahaa* - His mother said something.

B. *too kyaa huaa?* - What if ?

A. *voo baḍa tunuk mizaazi hai* - (He is) very short tempered

B. *isliyee khaanaa choodḳar calaa gayaa* - Therefore he gave up eating and went away.

C2A. *baccaa kahãã hai?* - Where is the boy ?

B. *voo kamreemẽẽ paḍaa hai?* - He is lying in the room.

A. *uskee haat mẽẽ paṭṭii kyõõ hai* - Why there is bandage in his hand?

B. *voo siiḍhii see gir paḍaa?* - He fell from the step.

C3A. *tumnee kyaa lee liyaa?* - What did you take away?

B. *mujhee joo caahiyee* - I took away whatever I wanted

thaa usee maĩnee lee liyaa I needed/ wanted.

A. *tumhẽẽ kyaa caahiyee thaa?* - What did you want?

B. *mujhee kapḍaa caahiyee thaa?* - I wanted clothe.

A. *tumnee leenee see pahlee puuchaa?* - Did you ask before taking?

B. *ya meeree bhaaii kaa hai puuchnaa kyõõ* - This is my brother's why ask?

A. *too tumnee binaa puuchee-kapḍaa lee liyaa?* - So you took the clothe without asking?

C4A. *voo kaun hai ?* - Who is he ?

B. *voo meeraa doost hai* - He is my friend.

A. *uskaa naam kyaa hai?* - What is his name ?

B. *uskaa naam raghu hai* - His name is Raghu.

A. *uskoo kyaa huaa?* - What happened to him ?

B. *uskaa paisaa khoo gayaa* - He lost(his) money.

A. *isliyee voo ant-sant bool uṭhaa* - Therefore he babled non sense.

C5A. *laḍkaa kyaa kar rahaa hai ?* - What is the boy doing?

B. *voo kyaa paḍh rahaa hai?* - What is he reading?

A. *voo apnaa paaṭh paḍh rahaa hai.* - He is reading his lesson

B. *voo kitnii jaldii paḍhtaa hai?* - How fast(quick) is he reading ?

B. *usnee das minaṭ mẽe saaraa paaṭh padh ḍaala* - Within ten minutes he read the entire lesson.

C6A. *andar kaun hai?* - Who is inside?

B. *andar meerii biibii hai* - My wife is inside.

A. *ya kyaa aavaaz hai?* - What is this sound?

B. *kuch gir gayaa hoogaa* - Something might have fallen.

A. *itnii zoor kii aavaaz huii na ?* - Such a loud noise?

B. *voo hameeśaa kuch na kuch galat kaam kar baiṭhtii hai* - She always does some thing or the other (wrong things)

VOCABULARY

chood - Leave/give up
jaa - Go/ complete
pad - Lay/fall
lee - Take/ away
uṭh - Getup /(blirt)out
ḍal - Put/ complete
baiṭ h - Sit proclaim
khaanaa - Food
siidhii - Step
puuch - Ask
binaa - Without
anṭ sanṭ - Non sense
kuch nakuch- Something or the other
gir padṇa - To Fall down
joo - Whatever
khoonaa - To lose
leenee see } - Before (taking)
pahlee } - Taking
jaldii - Quickly
saaraa - Entire
aavaaz - Sound
zoor - Force
galat kaam - Wrong things
siinaa - To stitch
kapḍa dhoona- Wash the clothes

TEACHERS NOTE:

M1. In place of *khaanaa* substitute *piinaa* -drinking, *likhnaa* -writing, *kheelnaa*- playing, *gaanaa*- singing.

M2. In place of *baccaa*- child(M) substitute *baccii*-girl(small), *laḍkii*- girl, *daadaa*-grand father, *naukaraanii* -maid servant & make necessary changes in the verbs.

M3. In place of *puuchee bina* substitute *kahee binaa*-without saying, *anumati liyee binaa*-without taking permission, *deekhee binaa*- without seeing. In place of

M4. *anṭ-sanṭ* substitute *gaalii galauj*- abuses, *bhalaa buraa*-Good and bad.

M5. In place of *paaṭh padh ḍaalaa* , *gaana gaa ḍaalaa, kheel kheel ḍaalaa,* play(game) played, *kapḍa dhoo ḍaalaa*- washed clothes, *kurtaa sii ḍaalaa*- stitched the shirt.

M6. In place of *galat kaam*- wrong work, *baḍa kaam*- great work, *kaṭhin kaam*- hard work, *aasaan kaam* - easy work.

LEARNER'S NOTE:

Kyaa kar baṭhii- What did she do? Similarly 'lag' begin/ start/hurt/ These intensifiers always precede another finite verb. These are also finite verbs but still when they are used as (auxilary verbs) it will emphasise.

GRAMMATICAL NOTE:

voo	*khaanaa*	*choodkar*	*calaa*	*gayaa*
He	food	leaving	went	away

He left Food and went away

baccaa	*siidhii*	*see*	*gir*	*padaa*
Child	step	from	fall	down

Child fell down from the step

ussee	*puuchee*	*binaa*	*tumnee*	*uskaa*	*kapḍa*	*lee*	*liyaa*
He	with ask	without	you	his	clothe	take	away

You took away his clothe without asking him.

voo	*antsant*	*bool*	*uṭhaa*
He	good bad	spoke	got up

He (said) (spoke) blirted nonsense.

Ladkeenee	*das*	*minaṭ*	*mẽe*	*paaṭh*	*paḍh*	*ḍalaa*
Boy	10	minutes	in	lesson	read	put

The boy read and completed the lesson within ten minutes.

voo	*kuch*	*na*	*kuch*	*galat*	*kaam*	*kar*	*baiṭhtii*	*hai*
She	some	no	some	wrong	work	does	sitting	is

She (always) does something or other wrong.

SUPPLEMENT

kiyee bina-without doing. This is an adverbial phrase. which will not change with the number gender & tense of the noun/ preceed verb. Frame similar sentences using padhee binaa- without reading , *deekhee binaa*-without seeing, *kahee binaa*- without saying, when *binaa* It will always be *kee binaa* Eg. *Paise kee binaa*-without money, *kitaab kee binaa*- without book etc.,

Practise the Nos upto thirty.

ikkiis	-	21	*chabbiis*	-	26
baaiis	-	22	*sattaaiis*	-	27
teeiis	-	23	*aṭṭhaaiis*	-	28
caubiis	-	24	*untiis*	-	29
pacciis	-	25	*tiis*	-	30

———o———

CYCLE - 23

Topical Focus : Weather conditions seasons

Grammatical Focus : Duration and seasonal works

Interrogative Ritual : *kin kin mahiinõõ mẽe*
In what (are all) months?
eek dam badhiyaa
Superb, No.1 , excellent

MODEL SENTENCES :

M 1. *garmii mẽe skuul aur kaaleejoonkoo chuṭṭii hootii hai* — During summer, school & colleges will have holidays/ vacation.

M 2. *barsaat kee mausam mẽe baahar jaanaa muskil hai* -It is difficult to go out during rainy season.

M 3. *jaaḍee mẽe garam kapḍẽe kii sakht zaruurat hai* During winter there is a great need for warm clothes.

M 4. *haamaaree deeś mẽe tiin ṛituẽe haĩ* There are three seasons in our country.

M 5. *haamaaree deeś mẽe skuul aur kaalejoonkee liyee kab chuṭṭii rahtii hai?*	In our country When will the schools and colleges have holiday/s?
M 6. *kis mausam mẽe baahar jaanaa muśkil hai?*	In which season it is difficult to go out?
M 7. *kab garam kapḍoonkii zaruurat hai?*	When is the need for warm clothes?
M8. *hamaaree deeś mẽe kitnii ṛituẽe hai?*	How many seasons are there in our country?

CONVERSATIONS

C1 **A**. *Tumkoo chuṭṭii kab rahtii hai?*
When will you have holidays?

B. *garmii mẽe chuṭṭii hootii hai?*
(will we have} holidays during summer?

A. *garmii kin kin mahiinõo mẽe hootii hai?*
In which months (of the year) is summer?

B. *dakṣin bhaarat mẽe aprail maii aur juun mahiinõo mẽe garmii kii chuṭṭii hootii hai?*
In South India there will be summer holidays during April , May & June.

A. *uttar bhaarat mẽe ?*
In northern India?

B. *uttar bhaarat mẽe maii , juun aur julaaii mẽe garmii kii chuṭṭii hootii hai?*
In North India there will be summer holidays during May , June & July.

C2 **A**. *aap kab kitaab likhnaa śuruu kareengee?*
When will you start writing the book?

B. *maĩ julaaii mẽe kitaab likhnaa śuruu karũugaa.*
I will start writng the book in the month of July.

A. *ussee pahlee kyõo nahii śuruu kartee?*
Why dont you start earlier than that?

B. *kyõo ki barsaat mẽe baahar jaanaa muśkil hai. isliyee ghar mẽe baiṭh kar likh saktaa hũũ*
Because it is difficult to go out during rainy season . So I will start during rainy season.

A. *kab tak likhnaa khatam kareengee?*
When will you complete writing the book?

B. *barsaat kee mausam mẽe hii khatam karũugaa.*
I will complete the book during rainy season(itself)

C 3 **A**. *hamẽe dauree par dakṣin bhaarat mẽe jaanaa hoogaa?*
We have to go on tour of South India.

B. *kyõo dakṣin bharat?*
Why South India?

A. *kyõo ki is vakt dakṣin mẽe bahut ṭhaṇḍ nahii raheegii.*
These days you will not feel very cold in the South.

B. *Ya baat hai?*
Is it so?

C 4 **A**. *hamaaree deeś mẽe kitnii ṛituẽe hootii haĩ ?*
How many seasons are there in our country?

B. *hamaaree deeś mẽe tiin ṛituẽe hootii haĩ .*
There are three seasons in our country.

A. *vee kaun kaunsii haĩ ?*
What are those?

B. *vee haĩ garmii barsaat aur jaaḍa ?*
They are summer, rainy season & winter

A. *yee kab see kab tak haĩ ?*
These are from when to when?

B. *Aprial see agast tak garmii haĩ*
From April to August is Summer.

A. *Agast see navambar tak barsaat haĩ*
From August to November it is winter.

B. *disambar see maarc tak jaaḍa haĩ*
From December to March is winter.

C 5 A. *aapkee yahãa sveṭar haĩ ?*
Do you have sweater ?

B. *deekhiyee saab, yee sab uunii haĩ ?*
Please see sir, These are all of wool?

A. *eek acchaa sveṭar deenaa ?*
Give me a good sweater.

B. *liijiyee saab, eek dam badhiyaa haĩ.*
Please take sir, This is A one (superb)

VOCABULARY

mausam	-	Season	*janvarii*	-	January
havaa	-	Weather	*farvarii*	-	February
garmii	-	Heat/summer	*maarc*	-	March
		Hot sun	*aprail*	-	April
jaaḍa	-	Cold/ winter	*maii*	-	May
baarīs	-	Rain/ Rainy	*juun*	-	June
mausam	-	season	*julaaii*	-	July
garam kapḍee	-	Warm clothes	*agast*	-	August
ṛiṭu	-	Season	*sitambar*	-	September
dauraa	-	Tour	*aktuubar*	-	October
dakṣin	-	South	*navambar*	-	November
chuṭṭii	-	Vacation	*disambar*	-	December

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *garmii mẽe* during summer substitute *raaṣṭriiya tyoohaarõo mẽe* during National festivals.

M2 In place of *barsaat kee mausam mẽe* during monsoon(Rainy days) season substitute *garmii mẽe* during summer *dhuup mẽe* in the hot sun.

M3 In place of *garm kapḍee-* warm clothes, substitute *uunii kapḍee-* woollen clothes, *reesmii kapḍee-* silk clothes, *mooṭee kapḍee-* thick clothes.

M4 In place of *hamaaree deeś mẽe* - In our country substitute *dakṣin bhaarat mẽe* - In South India, *uttar bhaarat mẽe* -in Northern India, *saaree bhaart mẽe* -In the whole of India.

M5 In place of *sveṭar* -Sweater substitute *barsatii*-rain coat (Terrace / portico) *chaataa*-umbrella, *garam kapḍee*-warm clothes.

LEARNER'S NOTE

eek dam badhiyaa superb, whenever you have to use superlative degree this is used-

taajmahal eek dam badhiaa hai

Tajmahal is the most (beautiful) (monument)

GRAMMATICAL NOTE

garmii	*mẽe*	*skuul*	*aur*	*kaaleejoon*	*koo*	*chuṭṭi*	*hootii*	*hai*
Summer	in	schools	&	colleges	to	vacation	happens	is

During summer schools and colleges will have vacation.

barsaat	*kee*	*mausam*	*mẽe*	*baahar*	*jaana*	*muśkil*	*hai*
rain	of	season	in	outside	to go	difficult	is

During rainy season it is difficult to go out.

jaaḍe	*mẽe*	*garam*	*kapḍoṅ kii*	*sakht*	*zaruurat*	*hai*
Winter	in	warm	clothes of	dire	necessity	is.

There is a great need for warm clothes in winter.

hamaaree	*deeś*	*mẽe*	*tiin*	*rituẽe*	*haĩ*
Our	country	in	threee	seasons	are

There are three seasons in our country.

SUPPLEMENT

Study the different country's climatic conditions and express in Hindi sentences.

Practise the following Nos.

¼	*paav*	31	*iktiis*
½	*aadhaa*	32	*batttiis*
¾	*paunaa*	33	*taintiis*
1	*eek*	34	*cauntiis*
1¼	*savaa*	35	*paintiis*
1½	*ḍeḍh*	36	*chattiis*
1¾	*paunee doo*	37	*saintiis*
2¼	*savaa doo*	38	*aḍtiis*
2½	*ḍhaaii*	39	*uncaaliis*
3½	*saaḍhee tiin*	40	*caaliis*

———o———

CYCLE - 24

Topical Focus : Booking a room in a hotel.

Grammatical Focus : na.....na neither nor

Interrogative : *kyaa hootaa hai ?*
What happens?

Ritual *ummiid hai ki*
It is hoped that

MODEL SENTENCES :

M 1. *hamaaraa hooṭel sasyaa haarii hai* - Our hotel is vegetarian

M 2. *Yahãa siṅgal ruum haĩ ḍabal ruum haĩ aur paararivarik griih bhii haĩ* - We have single rooms double rooms & also family suites.

M 3. *ḍabal ruum mẽe sirf doo hii loog rah saktee haĩ* - Only two persons can stay in a double room.

M 4. *agar eek baccaa hoo too eek atirikt bistar leenaa hoogaa* - If you have a child, you have to take an extra bed.

M 5.*aapkaa hoot̤el sasyaahaarii yaa maamsaahaari?* -Is your hotel vegetarian or non- vegetarian?

M 6.*d̤abal ruum haĩ?* - Is there a double room?

M 7.*d̤abal ruum mẽe kitnee loog rah saktee haĩ?* - How many people can stay in double room?

M 8.*d̤abal ruum mẽe doo loog our eek baccaa rah saktee haĩ?* - In double room two adults and a child can stay ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1A.*aapkaa hoot̤el bilkul sasyaahaarii hai na?* - Is your hotel absolutely vegetarian?

B.*bilkul yahãã tak ki ad̤aa bhii yahãã nahiĩ bantaa* - Absolutely (vegetarian) - even egg is not cooked here.

A.*tab too t̤hiik hai* - Then it is o. k.

B.*aapkoo kitnee dinõõ kee liyee caahiyee* - For how many days you need?

A.*hamẽe tiin dinõõ kee liyee caahiyee* - We need room for three days.

C2A.*aapkoo siṅgal ruum caahiyee yaa d̤abal ruum?* - Do you need a single room or a double room?

B.*aapkee yahãã kaise kaisee kamree haĩ?* - What are the varieties of rooms you have?

A.*hamaaree yahãã siṅgal ruum hai, d̤abal ruum hai aur paarivaarik grih bhii haĩ* - We have single room, double room and family suite.

C3A.*d̤abal ruum mẽe kitnee loog rah saktee haĩ?* - How many persons can stay in double room?

B.*d̤abal ruum mẽe doo loogoṅkee saath eek baccaa nahiĩ rah saktaa?* - In double room with two persons cant a child stay?

A.*rah saktaa hai leekin alag bistar leenaa pad̤eegaa .* - Can stay, but you have to take an extra bed.

B.*uskaa kiraayaa kyaa hoogaa?* - What will be the rent for that ?

A.*kamree kee liyee caar sau rupyee eek din kee liyee aur alag bistar kee liyee sau rupyee* - 400 Rs per day for double and Rs. 100 (per day)to take an extra bed.

C4A.*garam paanii aur bijili hameeśaa raheegaa na?* - Will hot water & electricity always be available ?

B.*zaruur, kamraa saaf suthraa hai usmẽe na macchar hai na khaṭmal* - Rooms are very clean. There are neither mosquito nor bugs.

VOCABULARY

paarivaarik grih	Family suite
atirikt	Additional
alag	Seperate
bistar	Bed
sasyaahaarii	Vegetarian

mamsaahaarii	Non vegetarian
anḍaa	Egg
sirf	Only
na.....na	Neither nor
macchar	Musquito
khaṭmal	Bed bug
bijilii	Electricity

TEACHERS'S NOTE

M1 In place of *hamaara hooṭel* substitute *unkaa hooṭel* - his hotel, *peeles hooṭel* -palace hotel.

In place of *sasyaahaarii* - vegetarian substitute *maamsaahaarii*-non vegetarian , *antaaraaṣṭriiya* - International.

M2 In place of *siṅgle aur ḍabal ruum* substitute *badee kamree big rooms* and *vaataanukuul kamree* -Air conditioned rooms.

M3 In place of *ḍabal ruum* substitute *siṅgal ruum, suvihaarii kamraa* -deluxe room.

In place of *sirf doo loog*- only two persons substitute *sirf caar loog* -only four persons.

M4 In place of *eek baccaa hoo too* -If there is child substitute *doo baccee hoo too* -if there are two children.

LEARNER'S NOTE

When a person is positively expecting something to happen, the expression ummiid hai ki -It is hoped that is used e.g. :-

kisaanõo koo ummiid hai ki aaj ṣaamkoo baariṣ zuruur aayeegi

Farmers hope that it will certainly rain this evening.

ummiid hai ki is saal sab vidyaarthii uttirn hõogee

It is hoped that all students will pass this year.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

hamaaraa	*hooṭel*	*sasyaahaarii*	*hai*
our	hotel	vegerarian	is

Ours is a vegetarian hotel

Yahãã	*siṅgal*	*ruum*	*hai*	*ḍabal*	*ruum*	*hai*	*aur*
Here	single	room	is	double	room	is	and

paarivaarik grih bhii	*hai*
family suite	is.

There are single rooms, double rooms, and family suites.

aapkaa?	*hooṭel*	*sasyaahaarii*	*hai*	*yaa*	*maamsaahaarii*
Your	hotel	vegetarian	is	or	non vegetarian

Is your hotel vegetarian or non vegetarian?

ḍabal	*ruum*	*mẽe*	*sirf*	*doo*	*loog*	*rah*	*saktee*	*hai*
double	room	in	only	two	persons	stay	can	are

Only two persons can stay in double room.

SUPPLEMENT

hoonaa is an auxilary verb used in the sense want and being It has forms like *hootaa, hootii, hootee* -past tense forms are *huaa huee huii*

Form five senstences using each form Learn the following numbers.

iktaaliis	41	*chiyaaliis*	46
bayaaliis	42	*saintaaliis*	47
taintaaliis	43	*aḍtaaliis*	48
cãuaaliis	44	*uñcaas*	49
paintaaliis	45	*pacaas*	50

———o———

CYCLE - 25

Topical Focus : About weather & seasons

Grammatical Focus : Use of *pad* happen occur(react) command, mandate, etc.,

Interrogative : *Kabsee kabtak* From When to when

Ritual : *jiskii laaṭhii, uskii bhaĩs* Survival of the fittest

MODEL SENTENCES :

M 1. *raajastaan mẽe bahut garmii padṭii hai*	-	It will be very hot in Rajastaan.
M 2. *maarc see juun tak garmii padṭii hai*	-	It will be hot from March upto June.
M 3. *aktuubar see farvarii ant tak bahut ṭhaṇḍ padṭii hai*	-	It will be very cold from October to end of February
M 4. *ṭhaṇḍ mẽe uunii kapḍee mahãgee padṭee hai*	-	Wollen clothes will be costly during winter
M 5. *amiir gariib koo sataataa-hai kyõõki jiskii laaṭhii uskii bhaĩs hai*		Rich person harass the poor because "survival of the fittest.

M 6. *kis raajy mẽe bahut garmii padṭii hai*	In which state it will be very hot?
M7 *kabsee kabtak(hamaaree dees̃ mẽe garmii padṭii hai ?*	From when to when it will be summer (in our country)
M8 *kab see kab tak thand̤ padṭii hai ?*	From when toWhen is the winter(in our country)
M9 *uunii kapḍee kab mahãgee padṭee haĩ ?*	When will woollen clothes be dear?
M10 *amiir gariib koo kyõ sataataa hai?*	Why does the rich man harass the poor?

CONVERSATIONS

C1A *bhaarat kee kis raajy mẽe zyaadaa garmii padṭhii hai?*	In which state of India it will be quite hot ?
B. *raajastaan mẽe*	In Rajasthan
A. *aur kis raajy mẽe zyaada garmii padṭii haĩ ?*	In which other state summer will be more?
B *uttarkee kaii rajyõo mẽe garmii zyaadaa padṭii hai .*	In several states in the north, summer will be severe.
A. *daks̤in̤ bhaarat mẽe kahã̃ garmii zyaadaa hootii hai*	In South India where summer will be severe?
B. *daks̤in̤ mẽe tamilnaad̤u mẽe garmii zyaadaa padṭii hai*	In South India Tamil nadu has sharp summer.
C2A. *hamaaree dees̃ mẽe kabsee kab tak garmii zyaadaa hootii hai?*	From when to when It will be quite hot in our country?

B. *maarc mahiinee see juun tak hamaaree dees̃ mẽe garmii zyaadaa hootii hai.*	From the month of March upto June it will be quite hot in our country.
A. *garmii kii chut̤iyã̃ kab hootii haĩ ?*	When will be the summer holidays?
B. *saamanyatayaa maarc see juun tak skuul aur kaaleejoonkoo chut̤iii hootii hai?*	Normally schools & colleges will have Holidays from March to June.
C3A. *bhaarat mẽe sardii kab hai?*	When is winter in India?
B. *aam taur par aktuubar see farvarii tak sardii kaa mausam hai.*	Normally from October to February winter season (in India)
A. *sardii kahã̃ zyaadaa padṭii hai?*	Where winter will be more severe?
B. *sardii uttarbhaarat mẽe zyaadaa padṭii hai?*	Winter will be very severe in North India.
C4A. *tab too sardii kee mausam mẽe garam kapḍee kii zaruurat bahut padṭii hai*	Then there will be a great demand for warm clothes during winter.
B. *Zaruur is mausam mẽe uunii kapḍee bahut mahãgee hootee haĩ*	In this season woollen clothes will be very dear
C5A. *amiir gariib koo kyõ sataataa hai?*	Why do the rich harass the poor?

B. *kyõõki amiir maalik hai aur gariib naukar hai*	Because rich person is a master & poor is a servant.
A. *too kyaa huaa?*	What if?
B. *ya zamaanaa aisaa hai, "jiskii laaṭhii, uskii bhaĩs"*	Days are such survival of the fittest.

VOCABULARY

sardii	Winter/Cold
ṭhaṇḍ	Cold
garmii	Heat/sun/summer
mausam	season
uunii kapḍee	woollen clothes
mahãgee	costly
amiir	Rich
gariib	Poor
laaṭhii	Stick/cane
bhaĩs	Buffalo
sataanaa	To harass

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In Place of *raajstaan mẽẽ* in Rajastan substitute the names of other states. In place of *garmii* substitute *"sardii"* - cold and make appropriate changes.

M2 In place of *maarc see juun tak* from March to June substitute *julaaii see aktuubar tak* from July to October & in place of *garmii padtii hai* substitute *baarĩs hootii hai* It rains.

M3 In place of *aktuubar see farvarii tak* from october to February substitute *maarc see julaaii tak* from March to july and in place of *ṭhaṇḍ* - cold substitute garmii heat summer.

M4. In place of *ṭhaṇḍ mẽẽ* - in winter substitute *garmii mẽẽ* summer in place of *mahãgee* -costly, *sastee*- cheap

M5 In place of *amiir* substitute *maalik* -master in place of *gariibõõ koo*- poor *naukaroonkoo* -servants.

LEARNER'S NOTE

jiskii laaṭhii uskii bhaĩs - One who has the stick can drive the buffalo i.e. survival of the fittest. He who has money can do anything.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

raajastaan	*mẽẽ*	*bahut*	*garmii*	*paḍtii*	*hai*
Rajastaan	in	much	heat	falls	is

It will be very hot in Rajastan

maarc	*see*	*juun*	*tak*	*garmii*	*paḍtii*	*hai*
March	from	June	till	summer	falls	is

It will be summer from March to June

aktuubar	*see*	*farvarii*	*tak*	*bahut*	*ṭhaṇḍ*	*paḍtii*	*hai*
October	from	February	till	much	cold	falls	is

It will be winter from October to February

ṭhaṇḍ	*mẽẽ*	*uunii*	*kapḍee*	*mahãgee*	*paḍtee*	*haĩ*
Winter	in	woollen	clothes	costly	fall	are

Woollen clothes are costly during winter.

jiskii	*laat̤hii*	*uskii*	*bhaĩs*
Whose	stick	his/her	buffalo

Survival of the fittest

SUPPLEMENT

Practise the Nos.

ikkaavan	51
baavan	52
tirupan	53
cauvvan	54
pacpan	55
chappan	56
sattaavan	57
at̤t̤haavan	58
unsat̤h	59
saat̤h	60

Padhaa happens / occur / materialise use in five meaning ful sentences. *see-tak* from to refers to distance & time / duration.

———o———

CYCLE - 26

Topical Focus : Activities in nature & human reactions

Grammatical Focus : Adverbial Clause / Phrase of time and simultaneous actions in different tenses.

Interrogative : *kyaa kar* what do / who do / does

Rituals : *padhtee samay khaanaa t̤hiik nahii* - It is not proper to eat while reading.

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *bambaii mẽẽ rahtee samay voo maraat̤hii bool rahaa thaa* - He was speaking in Marathi when he was in Bombay.

M2 *Paanii barastee samay mai ghar par hii thaa.* - At the time of raining I was at home. (only)

M3 *kal ghuumtee samay maĩ moohan see mil lũgaa* - Tomorrow I will meet Mohan while walking.

M4 *bambaii mẽe rahtee samay voo kaunsii bhaaṣaa bool rahaa thaa?* - What language was he speaking while in Bombay ?

M5 *paanii barastee samay tum kahãa thee ?* - Where were you when it was raining ?

M6 *moohan see tum kab miloogee ?* - When will you meet Mohan ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1 A *tumhaarii maatṛbhaaṣaa kyaa hai ? (kaunsii hai)* - What is your mother tongue ?

B *meerii maatṛbhaaṣaa kannaḍ hai* - My mother tongue is Kannada.

A *bambaii mẽe rahtee samay kaunsii bhaaaṣaa booltee thee ?* - What langauge were you speaking while in Bombay ?

B *bambaii mẽe rahtee samay maĩ maraaṭhii booltaa thaa* - I was speaking Marathi when I was in Bombay.

C2 A *kal pitaajii kahãa gayee thee ?* - Where had father gone yesterday ?

B *kal pitaajii daftar gayee thee* - Yesterday father had gone to the office

A *śaamkoo baariṣ huii na ?* - Didn't it rain in the evening ?

B *baariṣ hootee samay vee-ghar par hii thee* - At the time of raining he was at home. (only)

C3 A *tum moohan see kab miloogee ?* - When will you meet Mr. Mohan ?

B *abhii faislaa nahii kiyaa* - Not yet decided.

A *kal ghuumnee kab jaaoogee ?* - When will you go for a walk tomorrow ?

B *kal suba ghuumnee jaaũgaa* - Tomorrow I will go for a walk in the morning

A *too ghuumtee samay moohansee milkee aa saktee hoo ?* - Then can you meet Mohan and come while walking?

B *haã haã zaruur* - Yes, by all means.

VOCABULARY

samay / vakṭ	Time
... tee samay	While .... ing
lauṭtee samay	While returning
rahtee samay	While staying / living
ghuumnaa	To walk / tour / to take a stroll
kaunsii bhaaṣaa	Which language
maatṛbhaaṣaa	Mother tongue
daftar	Office
zaruur	Certainly / definitely / by all means
namrataa	humbleness
peeṣ aanaa	React / behave/confront

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *kheelsee lauṭtee samay* while returning from the sports / game / match substitute *baiṅksee lauṭtee samay* while returning from the bank *daftar see lauṭtee samay* while returning from the office.

M2 In place of *paanii barastee samay* while it is / was raining substitute *ṭi vii deekhtee samay* while watching T.V. *baccoonkee sootee samay* while the children are sleeping.

M3 In place of *ghuumtee samay* while walking substitute *daftar jaatee samay* while going to the office *baazaar jaatee samay* while going to the market, *kaaleej jaatee samay* while going to the college.

LEARNERS' NOTE

In India (orthodox) old people do not talk while eating. They concentrate only on food. They call *annabrahma'* Rice / Food / God Purpose is to concentrate. They have a worshipful attitude towards food. So this concentration on food while eating is very good for mind & body.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

bambaii	*mẽẽ*	*rahtee*	*samay*	*voo*	*maraaṭhii*	*bool rahaa*	*thaa*
Bombay	in	staying	while	he	Marathi	speaking	was

He was speaking Marathi (language) when he was in Bombay.

paanii	*barastee*	*samay*	*maĩ*	*ghar par hii*	*thaa*
Water	falling	time	I	was at	only

I was at home only when it was raining

kal	*ghuumtee samay/vakt*	*moohan see*	*milũugaa*
Tomorrow	strolling time	Mohan with	meet will

Tomorrow while having a stroll (I will) meet Mr. Mohan.

1 Adverbial clause/ pharse of time is formed by adding *tee* to the root of the verb followed by *samay / vakt* and this will be the first part of sentence.

e.g. *khãas* + *tee* + *samay* while caughing

2. Principal clause follows this. The phrase / clause is used to denote two simultaneous actions. The I part is indeclineable.

3. In the principal clause/ subject may be used or understood

e.g. *likhtee samay ..... reediio suntaa hai* (He) listens to radio while writing

4. Number gender person and tense of the verb will be determined by the verb in the principal clause. Adverbial clause / pharse will always be the same.

5. Impersonal clause is used to indicate some universal truths and the subject will be understood.

daudtee samay khaanaa nahii caahiyee (we/one/ people) should not eat while running.

SUPPLEMENT

Frame five sentences using the following

Phrases so as to bring out different sentences and persons in the principal clause.

gaatee samay	While singing
sootee samay	While asleep / sleeping
naactee samay	At the time of dancing
jhagadtee samay	While quarelling

Frame five sentences in impersonal voice. Practise Nos from 61 to 70

iksaṭh	61	*chiyaasaṭh*	66
baasaṭh	62	*saḍsaṭh*	67
tirsaṭh	63	*aḍsaṭh*	68
caũsaṭh	64	*unhattar*	69
paĩsaṭh	65	*sattar*	70

—o—

CYCLE - 27

Topical Focus : Commands and getting the things done by II & III persons

Grammatical Focus : Causitive forms of verbs *karnaa* to do *karaanaa* to get done *karvaanaa* Ask some body to get done.

Interrogative : *kiskee zariyee / dvaaraa* Through whom ? what ?

Rituals : *aree baapree !* Oh my God ?

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *Jaan aaj kaam nahĩ kartaa (hai)* - John does not work today.

M2 *uskoo aaj bukhaar hai* - He has fever to-day.

M3 *voo apnaa kaam apnee doost see karaaeegaa* - Today he will get his work done by his friend

M4	*aaj adhyaapak nee hamsee-kahaanii likhvaayii*	To-day teacher made us to write a story.
M5	*andhee vidyaarthii aãkhõo-vaalõo dvaaraa pariiksaa mẽe likhvaatee hai*	Blind students, through the sighted persons get the papers written in the examination
M6	*aaj kaun kaam nahii kartaa ?* -	Who does not work to-day ?
M7	*kiskoo aaj bukhaar hai ?*-	Who has fever to-day ?
M8	*voo apnaa kaam kissee karaaeegaa ?* -	From whom will he get his work done ?
M9	*aaj adhyaapak nee kyaa likhaayaa ?* -	What did the teacher make students write ? to-day (dictate)
M10	*andhee vidyaarthii kinsee-pariiksaa mẽe likhvaatee hai ?* -	From whom the blind students get their papers written in the examination?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*aaj kaun kaam nahii kartaa ?* -	Who does not work to-day ?
	B	*voo kyõo nahii kartaa?*-	Why does he not work to-day?
	A	*uskii tabiiyat ṭhiikh nahii* -	His health is not good.
	B	*uskoo kyaa biimarii hai ?* -	What is his sicknesss ?
	A	*uskoo bukhaar hai* -	He has fever.

C2	A	*uskaa kaam kaun kareegaa ?* -	Who will do his work ?
	B	*uskaa kaam uskaa doost kareegaa* -	His friend will do his work.
	A	*uskaa naam kyaa hai ?*-	What is his name ?
	B	*uskaa naam jaan hai* -	His name is John
	A	*voo apnaa kaam apnee doost jaan see karaaeegaa* -	He will get his work done by his friend Mr. John.
C3	A	*aaj kyaa padhaanaa hai ?* -	What is to be taught to-day ?
	B	*aaj bhuugool padhaanaa hai* -	Today you have to teach geogaraphy.
	A	*nahii aaj eek kahaanii bataauungaa* -	No to-day I will narrate a story.
	B	*haã haã zuruur bataaiee* -	Sir please tell
	A	*kahaanii sunaaneekee baad likhnaa hai* -	After narrating the story you have to write.
	A	*pichlee klaas mẽe bhii unhoonee kahaanii likhvaaii* -	In the previous class also he got the story written (by the students)
	B	*aisii baat hai ?* -	Is it so ?
C4	A	*andhee vidayaarthii bhii-pariiksaa likhtee hai ?*	Do the blind students also write the examination ?
	B	*nahii vee khud nahii likhtee* -	No they themselves don't write
	A	*phir kaun likhtaa hai ?* -	Then who writes ?
	B	*vee kahtee jaatee hai aur aãkhõo vaalee likhtee jaatee hai* -	They go on saying (directing) and sighted people write (go on writing)

	A	*leekin andhõo koo uttar kaisee maaluum hootaa hai ?*	- How will the blind know the answer ?
	B	*vee 'Brail' naamak sparślipi dwaaraa siikhtee hai*	- They learn through 'Brail script' (Touch & feel)
C5	A	*aapnee tyaagpatr likhaa?*	- Did you write the resignation letter ?
	B	*parsõo hii likh bheejaa*	- I wrote and sent day before yesterday itself.
	A	*tum khud dee aayee ?*	- Did you personally handover ?
	B	*meeree bhaaiinee capraasii dvaaraa bhijvaa diyaa*	- My brother sent through the servant.

VOCABULARY

karaanaa	Cause to do		
dvaaraa/zariyee	through		
bukhaar	fever	sii	Stitch
andhaa	Blind	naac	Dance
kissee	By whom/which		
bhuugool	Geography		
khud	Personally		
capraasii	Peon/Servant		
bheejnaa	To send		
tyaagpatr	Resignation		
andhee	Blind (Male)		
andhii	Blind (Female)		
sparślipi	Touch & (feel) script / Brail)		

preeranaarthak kriya	Causitive verb
dwipreeranaarthak kriya	Double causitive verb

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *jaan* substitute all pronouns and make necessary changes in the verb endings.

In place *kaam nahii kartaa* substitute *paath nahii padhtaa* does not read lesson *kahaanii nahii likhtaa* does not write story *kapḍaa nahii dhootaa* does not wash clothes.

M2 In place of *uskoo* to him/her substitute *mujhkoo* to me *aapkoo* to you *kiskoo* for whom *paḍosiikoo* to the neighbour. In place of *bukhaar* fever substitute *sardard*, *headache*, *khãsii*, *cough jukhaam* cold, *thakaavat* fatigue.

M3 In place of of *doostsee* by friend substitute *bhaaiisee* with-brother *naukar see* by servant *naukaraaniisee* by maid servant.

M4 In place of *adhyaapak nee* substitute all other pronouns and change the verb ending if required only.

In place of *kahaanii* story substitute *prabandh* essay, *naatak* play (stage) *upanyaas* novel and make necessary changes in the verb.

M5 In place of *andhee vidyaarthii* Blind students substitute *luulee* vidyarthii disabled (without hand) apaahij - paralysed.

Ask students to frame Ten sentences with causitive verbs and double causitive verbs.

LEARNER'S NOTE

A	*Kal mujhee maisuur jaanaa hii hai*	- Tomorrow I must go to Mysore (at any cost)
B	*jaanee mẽe takliif kyaa hai ?*	- What is the problem / difficulty for going ?
A	*meerii gaaḍii kharab hai kal tak ṭhiik nahiĩ hoo saktii*	- My vehicle has some problem. It will not be ready by tomorrow.
B	*tum gaaḍii lee aaoo ham milkar ṭhiik karẽegee jahã̃a caah hai vahã̃a raah hai*	- You bring the vehicle let us jointly repair it Where there is a will there is a way.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

Jaan	*aaj*	*kaam*	*nahiĩ*	*kartaa (hai)*
John	to-day	work	not	does (is)

John does not do the work to-day

A. Note that copula *hai* (is) not necessary in present tense negative sentenec It is understood.

B

uskoo	*aaj*	*bukhaar*	*hai*
To him	to-day	fever	is

He has fever to-day.

While describing mental & physical condition subject takes the dative case sign *koo* whereas in English it will be in nominative case.

C

voo	*apnaa*	*kaam*	*apnee*	*doost*	*see*	*karaaeegaa*
He	his	work	his	friend	by	will get done

He will get his work done by his friend

D

aaj	*adhyaapak nee*	*kahaanii*	*likhvaayii*
Today	Master	story	got written

To-day master made (the students) write story.

andhee	*vidyaarthii*	*ã̃akhõ̃o*	*vaaleesee*	*pariikṣaa*	*mẽe*
Blind	Students	eyes	with	examination	in

likhvaatee	*haĩ*
written	is

Blind students get their paper written by persons with eyes in the examination.

1. Causitive forms are formed by adding long vowel *aa* to the root of the verb but *naa* or gender number and tense marker should be followed.

e.g. *likh* write — *likhaa* get written — *likhvaa* cause to get written

There are some verbs exception to this rule.

Root	causitive	Double causitive
Khaanaa	*Khilaanaa*	*Khilvaanaa*
deenaa	*dilaanaa*	*dilvaanaa*
paḍhnaa	*paḍhaanaa*	*paḍhvaanaa*
siinaa	*silaanaa*	*silvaanaa*
naacnaa	*nacaanaa*	*nacvaanaa*

SUPPLEMENT

Frame five sentences using verbs in causitive & double causitive forms

deekh	see
dhoo	wash
daud̤	Run
ban	Become / Be made
bãdh	Tie
roonaa	To cry
hãsnaa	To laugh

———o———

CYCLE - 28

Topical Focus : Mixed nouns & pronouns dialogue about needs.

Grammatical Focus : Plural forms of marked & unmarked nouns & pronouns Masculine & femine sigular & Plural forms with case endings & without case ending.

Interrogative : *kaun* with case endings is singular & plural

Rituals : *naac na jaanee ãgan tẹed̤haa*
(Blame some body for one's weakness) *Rolling stone gathers no mass.*

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *caar ladkee maidaan mẽe kheel rahee hai* - Four boys are playing in the field

M2 *eek lad̤kii sad̤ak par jaa rahii hai* - one girl is walking/going on the road.

M3	*caar ladkoomẽẽ eek bhii ladkaa gaanaa nahii jaantaa*	- Among the four boys even a single boy does not know to sing.
M4	*caar ladkiyõõ mẽẽ sirf eek ladkii naacnaa jaantii hai*	- Among the four girls only one girl knows dancing.
M5	*maidaan mẽẽ kitnee ladkee kheel rahee hai ?*	- How many boys are playing in the field ?
M6	*ladkii kahãã jaa rahii hai ?*	- Where is the girl going?
M7	*caar ladkõõmẽẽ kitnee ladkee gaanaa jaantee hai?*	- Among the four boys how many boys know singing ?
M8	*caar ladkiyõõmẽẽ kitnii ladkiyãã naacnaa jaantii hai ?*	- Among the four girls how many girls know dancing ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*ladkee kahãã kheel rahee hai ?*	- Where are the boys playing ?
	B	*ladkee maidaan mẽẽ kheel rahee hai*	- Boys are playing in the field/play ground.
	A	*kitnee ladkee maidaan mẽẽ kheel rahee hai ?*	- How many boys are playing in the field ?
	B	*caar ladkee kheel rahee hai*	- Four boys are playing.
	A	*vee kyaa kheel rahee hai ?*	- What are they playing ?
	B	*vee kabaddii kheel rahee hai*	- They are playing kabaddi.

C2	A	*sadak par kaun jaa rahaa hai ?*	- Who is going on the Road ?
	B	*eek ladkii sadak par jaa rahii hai*	- One girl is going on the Road
	A	*voo kyõõ jaa rahii hai ?*	- Why is she going ?
	B	*maaluum nahii ?*	- (I) don't know.
C3	A	*kamree mẽẽ ladkee kyaa kar rahee hai ?*	- What are the boys doing in the room ?
	B	*vee padh rahee hai*	- They are reading.
	A	*kamree mẽẽ kitnee ladkee hai ?*	- How many boys are there in the room ?
	B	*kamree mẽẽ caar ladkee hai*	- There are four boys in the room
	A	*unmẽẽ see kitnõõ koo gaanaa maaluum hai ?*	- Among them how many (boys) know singing ?
	B	*caar ladkoomẽẽ eek bhii ladkaa gaanaa nahii jaantaa*	- Among the four boys. even one boy does not know singing.
C4	A	*ladkiyãã skuul mẽẽ kyaa siikhitii hai ?*	- What do the girls learn in the school ?
	B	*ladkiyãã skuul mẽẽ padhnaa, likhnaa gaanaa aur naachnaa siikhtii hai*	- Girls learn reading writing, singing & dancing in the school.
	A	*kyaa sab ladkiyõõkoo naacnaa maaluum hai ?*	- Do all the girls know dancing ?
	B	*nahii sirf caarõõkoo maaluum hai*	- No only four (girls) know (dancing)
	A	*baakii tiinõõnee kyõõ nahii siikhaa ?*	- Why did the other three (girls) not learn ?
	B	*unhoonee gaanaa siikhaa*	- They learnt singing.

VOCABULARY

sirf only
eek bhii even one
kabaḍḍii A folk game played in cities also
caarõõkoo For all the four
tiinõõkoo For all the three
naacnaa Dancing
Praduuṣaṇ Pollution
naac Dance
niraāsaavaadii Pessimist
gaanaa To sing / song
samaaj Society
saḍak par on the road
naacana Jaanee aãgan ṭeeḍhaa
one who does not know to dance
says ground is not level
(so cant dance well)
mazduurii wages
naujavaan youth(s)

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *caar laḍkee* substitute *khilaaḍii* and make necessary changes in the verb. In place of *caar laḍkee* substitute *eek laḍkii*. In place of *kheel* substitute *dauḍ* (run)

M2 In place of *eek laḍkii* substitute *caar laḍkee pãac laḍkiyãã* , *eek kuttaa*

M3 In place of *eek bhii* substitute *sab laḍkee* All boys. In place of *gaanaa* singing substitute *naacnaa* dancing *siinaa* stitching *khaanaa Pakaanaa* Cooking

M4 In place of *caar laḍkiyõõ mẽẽ* substitute *das* Ten, *biis* Twenty.

LEARNERS' NOTE

In olden days in India Dancing & singing used to be considered female arts but not any more. Men are equally efficient in both Arts. In India even now music & Home science subjects are studied by girl students. Visit some Dance & music concerts.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

caar	*laḍkee*	*maidaan*	*mẽẽ*	*kheel rahee*	*hai*
Four	boys	field	in	playing	are

Four boys are playing in the field.

eek	*laḍkii*	*saḍakpar*	*Jaa rahii*	*hai*
one	girl	road on	going	is

One girl is going on the Road

caar	*laḍkõõ*	*mẽẽ*	*eek*	*bhii*	*laḍkaa*	*gaanaa*	*nahii*	*jaantaa*
Four	boys	among	one	even	boy	singing	no	know

Among the four boys, even a single boy does not know singing.

caar	*laḍkiyõõ*	*mẽẽ*	*sirf*	*eek*	*laḍkii*	*naacnaa*	*jaantii*	*hai*
Four	girls	among	only	one	girl	dancing	know	is

Among the four girls, only one knows to dance.

1. *aa* ending masculine common nouns take *ee* in Plural and *õõ* in plural with a case ending.

ladḳaa	Boy
ladḳee	Boys
ladḳoo	Boys ...
ladḳõõ koo	For the boys

2. *ii* ending femine nouns take *yãã* in plural *yõõ* in plural & case ending

ladḳii	Girl
ladḳiyãã	Girls
ladḳiyõõ	Gilrs ....
ladḳiyõõ koo	To / For girls

aa ending feminine nouns (mostly sanskrit origin) take *ẽẽ* in plural & *õõ* in plural when followed by case ending.

maalaa	Garland
maalaaẽẽ	Garlands
maalaaõõ	Garlands ....
maalaaõõ see	with garlands

SUPPLEMENT

Translate into English

1. *eek eek ladḳee koo doo doo kitaabẽẽ doo*
2. *das ladḳiyõõnee gaayaa aur pããc ladḳiyãã naacii*

3. *kitnee ladḳõõnee kavitaa likhii ?*

Translate into Hindi

1. People are not aware of environmental pollution.
2. Youths are becoming pessimistic
3. Women need equal status in the society.
4. Children should not be asked to work.
5. Now a days labourers are not getting fair wages

Translate into Hindi

1. Give respect to the teachers, parents & elders.
2. Men must work at home also.
3. Women must do outdoor work also.
4. Labourers are not getting fair wages.
5. Children should be taught through games.

———o———

CYCLE - 29

Topical Focus : Multi Actions one after the other

Grammatical Focus : Productive & incomplete form *of kar* do in all tenses.

Interrogative : *khaanaa khaa kar kyaa kyaa ? karẽege ?* After taking meal what all the things will you do ?

Rituals : *kyaa seevaa karũu ?* May I help you ? / What shall I do for you ?

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *meeraa doost sinemaa deekh kar ghar gayaa* - My friend went home after seeing the movie.

M2 *vidyaarthiyõonee paaṭh likhkar reeḍyoo sunaa* - Students heard radio after reading the lesson.

M3 *ghar jaakar kapḍaa dhoonaa jhaaḍuu deenaa aur paaṭh padhnaa hai* - After going home, I/we have to wash clothes sweep house and read the lesson.

M4	*Kriket kheelkar khilaadiyõõ nee aglee dinkee liyee abhyaas kiyaa*	After playing circket the players practised for the next day (game)
M5	*tumhaaraa doost sinemaa-deekhkar kahã̃ã gayaa ?*	Where did your friend go after seeing the movie?
M6	*vidyaarthiyõõnee paath likhkar kyã̃ã sunaa*	What did the students listen to after reading the lesson ?
M7	*ghar jaakar tumhee kyaa-kyaa karnaa hai ?*	What are the things you have to do after going home?
M8	*kriket kheelkar khilaadii -yõõ nee kyaa kiyaa ?*	What did the players do after palying cricket?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*tumhaaraa doost ab khã̃ã hai ?*	Where is your friend now ?
	B	*meeraa doost sāanti taakiis mẽẽ sineemaa deekh rahaa hai*	My friend is watching a movie in Shanthi talkies.
	A	*voo sinemaa deekhkar kahã̃ã jaaeegaa ?*	Where will he go after seeing the movie ?
	B	*voo sinemaa deekhkar ghar jaaeegaa*	He will go home after seeing the movie.
C2	A	*vidyaarthiyõõ nee kyaa likhaa ?*	What did the students write ?
	B	*vidyaarthiyõõ nee paath-likhaa*	Students wrote lesson
	A	*paath likhkar kyaa kiyaa ?*	What did they do after writing lesson ?

	B	*paath likhkar reediyoo mẽẽ khabarẽẽ sunii*	After writing lesson, they listened to news over the radio.
C3	A	*tum yahã̃ãsee kahã̃ã jaa rahee hoo ?*	Where are you going from here ?
	B	*mãi yahã̃ãsee ghar jaa rahaa hũũ*	I am going home from here.
	A	*ghar mẽẽ kyaa kyaa kaam hãi ?*	What are all the things to do at home ?
	B	*ghar jaakar jhaaduu deekar, kapdaa dhookar paath padhkar phir soonaa hai*	After going home I have to sweep, wash clothes, read the lesson & then go to sleep.
C4	A	*mãi aapkii kyaa seevaa karũũ ?*	What can I do for you?
	B	*aap khilaadiyõõ kee liyee khaanaa laayiyee*	You please bring food for the players.
	A	*khilaadii kabtak kriket kheeleengee*	Till what time the players will play cricket?
	B	*pã̃ãc bajee tak kheeleengee*	They will play till 5 'o' clock
	A	*kriket kheelkar kyaa kareengee ?*	What will they do after playing cricket ?
	B	*kheelkar aglee dinkee liyee abhyaas kareengee*	After playing they will practise for the next day.

khilaadii	Players
abhyaas	Practice
jhaaduu	Broomstick
dhoonaa	Wash

seevaa	Service
khabarẽẽ	News
sunnaa	Listening
paisaa nikaalnaa	Withdraw money
baiṅk	Bank
haazirii leena	To take attendance

Practise Nos from 61 to 70

iksaṭh	61
baasaṭh	62
tirsaṭh	63
cãuṣaṭh	64
pãisaṭh	65
chiyaasaṭh	66
saḍsaṭh	67
aḍsaṭh	68
unhattar	69
sattar	70

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *meeraa doost* my friend substitute *tumhaaraa doost* your friend *tumhaaraa bhaaii* your brother *tumhaaree pitaajii* your father.

In place of *sinemaa deekhkar* seeing the movie substittue *naaṭak deekhkar* seeing the Play, *sarkas deekhkar* seeing the circus.

M2 In place of *reeḍioo sunaa* heard the radio substittue *gaanaa sunaa* heard a song *naac deekhaa* saw the dance.

M3 In place of *kapḍaa dhoonaa* washing the clothes substitute *khaanaa banaanaa* cooking *kaafii piinaa* drinking coffee, *istrii karnaa* ironing the clothes

M4 In place of *kriket* Cricket substitute *ṭenis* Tennis, *vaalii baal* Volley ball & other sports.

In place of *abhyaas kiyaa* practised substitute *nahaayaa* bathed *kaafii pii* drank coffee *kapḍee badlee* changed dress.

LEARNERS' NOTE

Cricket is the most popular game in India. It is becoming international game. Particlularly students evince lot of interest in this game. Nowadays there is much stress among the youths and more and more youths are not able to plan their future due to unemployment and due to lack of resources to start business so they are becoming pessimistic.

meeraa	*doost*	*sinemaa*	*dekhkar*	*ghar*	*gayaa*
My	friend	movie	seeing	home	went

My friend went home having seen the movie

vidyaarthiyõonee	*paaṭh*	*likhkar*	*reeḍioo*	*sunaa*
students	lesson	writing	Radio	Heard

Students listened to radio after writing the lesson

ghar	*jaakar*	*jhaaḍuu*	*deenaa*	*kapḍaa*	*dhoonaa*	*aur*
house	going	Broom	give	clothe	wash	&

paaṭh	*paḍhnaa*	*hai*
lesson	read	is

After going home, I have to sweep, wash clothes & read the lesson.

kriket	*kheelkar*	*khilaaḍiyõonee*	*aglee*	*dinkee*	*liyee*
Cricket	playing	players	next	day	for

abhyaas	*kiyaa*
practice	did

After playing cricket, players practised for the next day.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

1. *Kar* is a productive verb. This comes with a finite verb & followed by another verb. This means it makes the preceeding verb. a gerund. It is used in the sense of after doing having done, being done e.g. *jaakar deekhoo* go & see having gone see - After going see to indicate series of actions *kar* can be suffixed to the verbs

   e.g. ghar jaakar nahaakar khaanaa khaakar soo kar jaaoo

   Having gone home (after) taking bath having dinner go to sleep.

SUPPLEMENT

Combine the following sentences by using the gerundial particle kar - (ing)

1. E.g. *duukaan Jaaoo* Go to the shop

   kapḍaa khariidoo Buy Cloth

   baink jaaoo Go to Bank

   paisaa nikaaloo Withdraw money

   jaldii vaapas aaoo Come back soon

duukaan jaakar, kapḍaa khariidkar baink jaakar paisaa nikaalkar jaldii vaapas aaoo.

Go to the shop, buy cloth, go to the bank, withdraw money and come back soon.

2. Split into small sentences removing gerundial particle *kar*

adhyaapak skuul jaakar haazirii leekar paaṭh paḍhaakar, baccõõkee saath kheelkar ghar aate hai.

———o———

CYCLE - 30

Topical Focus : Common social results

Grammatical Focus : Action - result verb infinitive + see Adverbial *paḍhneesee* by reading phrase of reason gerundial phrase

Interrogative : *kyaa karnee see* By doing what

Rituals : *Joo bhii hõõ* what ever may it be

MODEL SENTENCES

M1	*dil lagaakar mehnat karneesee hamaaree kaam mẽẽ zaruur safalataa mileegii*	- By working hard,putting our heart and soul we will certainly get success in our work.
M2	*kitaabẽẽ paḍhnee see jnaan baḍheegaa*	- Knowledge will increase by reading the books
M3	*kasrat karnee see badan koo taakạt mileegii*	- By doing excercise, body will get strength
M4	*vidyaarthii mehnat karkee-*	Student failed in the

	na padhnee see imtahaan mẽe naapaas hoogayaa	examination for not putting effort & read.
M5	*kyaa karneesee hamaaree-kaam mẽe safalataa mileegii?*	By doing what we become successful in our effort ?
M6	*kitaabẽe padhnee see kyaa laabh hoogaa ?* -	What benefit will we get by reading books ?
M7	*kasrat karnee see hamẽe kyaa mileegaa ?* -	What do we gain by doing excercise ?
M8	*vidyaarthii kyõõ imtahaan mẽe naapaas hoo gayaa ?* -	Why did the student fail in the examination ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*kyaa kar rahee hoo ?* -	What are you doing ?
	B	*imtahaan kee liyee khuub padh rahaa hũũ* -	Studying hard for the examination.
	A	*phir fikr kyõõ ?* -	Then why worry ?
	B	*šak hai ki imtahaan mẽe uttiirn hooũũgaa yaa nahii* -	I doubt whether I will pass in the examination or not.
	A	*mujhee apnee uupar hii-bharoosaa nahii* -	I dont have confidence in myself
	B	*dil lagaakar mehnat karnee see zaruur uttiirn hoo jaaoogee.* -	By working hard putting your heart and soul you will certainly pass.
C2	A	*kyaa kar rahee hoo ?* -	What are you doing ?
	B	*kitaab padh rahaa hũũ* -	Reading a book
	A	*Imtahaan hoo gayaa na?* -	Exmns are over, is n't it?
		phir kyaa padhtee hoo?	What is there to read again

	B	*sirf imtahaan kee liyee nahii padhtaa, padhnee see jnaan badhtaa hai* -	I dont read only for exmn. By reading books knowledge will be enriched.
C3	A	*kahã jaa rahee hoo ?* -	Where are you going ?
	B	*vyaayaam šaalaa jaa rahaa hũũ* -	Going to gymnasium.
	A	*kyõõ vahã jaanaa hai?* -	Why do you have to go there ?
	B	*kasrat karnee kee liyee* -	To do excercise
	A	*issee kyaa faaydaa ?* -	What is the benefit by (exercise) this ?
	B	*kasrat karneesee badan-koo taakat miltii hai* -	By doing excerise body will get strength.
C4	A	*tumhaaraa imtahaan kab hai ?* -	When is your examination ?
	B	*vo too pichlee mahinee hoo gayaa* -	That was over last month
	A	*tum too paas hoo gayee-na ?* -	You have passed isn't it ?
	B	*nahii bhaaii* -	No.
	A	*kyõõ ?* -	Why ?
	B	dil lagaakar mehnat *karkee nahii padhaa isliyee naapaas hoogayaa* -	Did n't study well by putting heart & soul therefore I failed.
	A	*phir kyaa karoogee ?* -	Then what will you do ?
	B	*joo bhii hoo aglee saal dil lagaakar mehnat karũũga aur uttiirn hoo jaaũũgaa* -	Come what may, next year I will work hard & concentrate (on studies) & pass the examination.

VOCABULARY

dil lagaana	Concentrate, putting heart & soul
mehnat	Hard work
safalataa	success
jnaan baḍhaanaa	enrich knowledge
kasrat	exercise
badan	body
taakat	strength
vyaayaam śaalaa	Gymnasium
naa paas	Fail
uttiirṇ	Pass
hooḍ/maic	competition / match
peeṭ	stomach
bhar	fill
pyaas	thirst
bujh	quench

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *mehnat karnee see* by doing hard work substitute *mehnat na karneese* by not doing hard work & make necessary changes to make the sentence meaningful.

M2 In place of *kitaabẽe paḍhnee see* by reading books substitute *kapḍaa dhoonee see* by washing clothes in place of *jnaan baḍheegaa* substitute *saaf hoogaa* will become clean.

M3 In place of *kasrat karnee see* by doing exercise substitute *sangiit sunnee see* by listening to music *tabiiyat khuś hoo jaayeegii*

M4 In place of *vidyaarthii* students substitute *khilaaḍii*

players in place of *imtahaan mẽe* in the examination substitute *maic mẽe (hooḍ)* In place of *naapaas hoo gayaa* failed substitute *haar gayee* were defeated.

LEARNERS' NOTE

joo bhii hoo come what may

This expression is used to indicate the firm determination to do a thing at all cost facing odds struggling at every step to achieve a goal

In Indian schools passing examinations mainly depend up on memory therefore hard work is necessary to pass the examination.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

dil	*lagaakar*	*mehnat*	*karnee see*	*hamaaree*
mind	applying	hardwork	doing	our

kaam mẽe	*zaruur*	*safalataa*	*mileegii*
work in	certainly	success	will come

If we work hard by putting our heart and soul into it, we will definitely succeed in our work.

kitaabẽe	*paḍhnee see*	*Jnaan*	*baḍheegaa*
Books	Reading by	knowledge	will increase

By reading books, knowledge will be enriched.

kasrat	*karnee see*	*badan koo*	*taakat*	*mileegii*
exercise	doing by	body to	strength	will get

By doing exercise body will get strength.

vidyaarthii	*mehnat*	*karkee*	*na*	*padhneesẽe*
student	hardwork	doing	not	reading by

imtahaan mẽe	*naapaass*	*hoo gayaa*
examination in	not pass	became

Student failed in the examination for not studying hard.

1. Verb root followed by *nee see* will form an adverbial clause or phrase of reason. In this type *karnee see* should preceed a verb and followed by noun pharase with a finite verb.

2. The noun phrase finite verb will determine the tense
   e.g. *khaanee see peet bhartaa hai, paanii piinee see*
   stomach will fill by eating by drinking water
   pyaas bujhtii hai
   thirst will quench

   In these sentences verbs *bhar* fill & *bujh* quench will determine the tense

SUPPLEMENT

Frame ten sentences by adding *nee* & *see* to the verb in different tenses.

e.g. *kapdaa siinee see paisaa miltaa hai*
we get (earn) money by stitching clothe

baariš padnee see kuãa bhar gayaa
As it rained the well filled

badoonkii baat sunnee see baccee akłmand hõogee
By listening to the elders children will become intelligent

Practise the Nos. from 71 to 80

ikhattar	*71*
bahattar	*72*
tihattar	*73*
cauhattar	*74*
pachattar	*75*
chihattar	*76*
satattar	*77*
athattar	*78*
unyaasii	*79*
assii	*80*

———o———

UNIT

4

(CYCLE 31 to 40)

CYCLE - 31

Topical Focus : Nos groups probability

Grammatical Focus : *aaṭh das, biisõõ śaayad*
8 - 10 scores perhaps
kariib kariib About

Interrogative : *kariib kitnee dinõõ mẽẽ*
In about how many days

Rituals : *Joo aapkii marzii*
As you please / wish

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *jaan aaṭh das dinõõ mẽẽ kaam puuraa kareegaa* - John will complete the work in eight or ten days.

M2 *pichlee saal bhuukamp mẽẽ gujaraat mẽẽ hazaarõõ loog mar gayee* - Last year thousands of people died in earthquake in Gujraat.

M3 *dillii beṅgluur see kariib doo hazaar miil hai* - Delhi is about 2,000 miles from Bangalore.

M4	*aap meeree liyee eek chaataa laayeṅgee?*	- Will you please bring an umbrella for me?
M5	*jaan kitnee dinõõmẽẽ kaam puuraa kareegaa?*	- In how many days, will John complete the work?
M6	*pichlee saal gujraatmẽẽ bhuukamp mẽẽ kitnee loog mar gayee ?*	- Last year how many people died in Gujrat earth quake?
M7	*dillii beṅgluursee kariib kitnii miil duur hai ?*	- How many miles Dehi is from Bangalore?
M8	*mãi aapkee liyee kyaa laaũũ ?*	- What shall I bring for you.

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*jaan kyaa kar rahaa hai ?*	- What is john doing ?
	B	*voo lakḍiikaa kaam kar-rahaa hai*	- He is doing wood work
	A	*voo kab tak khatam kareegaa ?*	- When will he finish the work.
	B	*aaṭh das dinõõ mẽẽ khatam kareegaa*	- Will complete in eight to ten days
C2	A	*bhaarat mẽẽ pichlee saal hazaarõõ kii jaanẽẽ kahaa gayii*	- Where thousands of (people) lost there lives last year in India.
	B	*pichlee saal gujraat mẽẽ hazaarõõ kii jaanẽẽ gayii*	- Last year thousands of lives were last in Gujrat
	A	*unkii jaanẽẽ kaisee gayii*	- How did they lose their lives.
	B	*vahãã bhuucaal huii isliyee hazaarõõ loog mar gayee ?*	- Earth quake took place there and therefore thousands of people died.

	A	*kariib kitnee loog mar gayee ?*	- How many people (might have) died ?
	B	*šaayad das hazaar loog mar gayee hõõgee*	- Perhaps ten thousand people might have died.
C3	A	*dillii beṅgluur see kitnii duur hai ?*	- How far is Delhi from From Bangalore ?
	B	*voo too bahut duur hai*	- It is quite far
	A	*bahut maanee ?*	- Too (far) means ?
	B	*kariib ḍeeḍh hazaar miil hai*	- About thousand five hundred miles
C4	A	*aap kahãã jaa rahee hai ?*	- Where are you going ?
	B	*mãi duukaan jaa rahaa hũũ*	- I am going to a store
	A	*baarišhoo rahii hai na?*	- It is raining isn't it ?
	B	*meeree paas chaataa hai*	- I have an umbrella with me
	A	*meeree paas chaataa nahii hai*	- I dont have an umbrella with me
	B	*aap duukaan see aatee vakt meeree liyee bhii eek chataa laayeṅgee ?*	- While coming from shop will you please bring me also an umbrella?
	A	*zaruur laaũũgaa*	- Certainly I will bring.

VOCABULARY

duur	Far
šaayad	Perhaps Prabably
Kariib	About, approximately Near
bhuukamp } *bhuucaal* }	Earth quake
chaataa	Umbrella

ḍeeḍh sau	150
maanee	means
biisõõ	scores of
hazaarõõ	thousands
saikḍõõ	Hundreds
aatee vakt	while coming
zalzalaa	volcano
baaḍh	Floods
haijaa	Plagae
visuucikaa	Cholera

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *jaan* substute ham we, *Vidyaarthii* students, *baḍhaii* carpenter *mazduur* Labourer *sunaar* goldsmith *luhaar* iron smith and make necessary changes in the verb.

In place of *aaṭh das dinõõmẽẽ* 8 or 10 days substitute *eekaadh mahiinõõ mẽẽ* in a couple of months, *doo tiin saaloomẽẽ* in two (or) three years *pandra biis dinõõ mẽẽ* in 15 or 20 days.

In place of *puuraa* full / complete substitute *aadhaa* half *eek tihaaii* $^1/_3$ *thooḍaa* a little / some.

M2 In place of *Pichlee saal* Previous year substitute *pichlee mahiinee* last month *pichlee haftee* last week, *aaṭh das mahiinõõ pahlee* 8 or 10 months ago.

In place of *bhuukamp mẽẽ* substitute *bhuucaal mẽẽ baaḍh mẽẽ* in the floods *haijee see* on account of plague.

In place of *gujraatmẽẽ* substitute *laaṭuur mẽẽ* in Laaṭuur *turkmẽẽ* in Turkey *afgaanistaan mẽẽ* in Afganistan *Paakistaan mẽẽ* in Pakistan.

In place of *hazaarõõ* thousands substitute *laakhõõ* lakhs *karooḍõõ* crores *saikḍõõ* hundreds *biisõõ* scores.

In place of *mar gayee* died substitute *beeghar* homeless, *ghaayal* wounded *yatiim* orphans.

M3 In place of *dillii* Delhi substitute *bambaii* Bombay *kolkataa* Calcutta *cennai* Chennai.

In place of *ḍeeḍh hazaar* 1500 substitute *ḍhaaii sau* 250 *tiin hazaar* 3000 & *saḍhee pãõc sau* 550.

In place of *kariib* about substitute *bilkul* certainly *ṭhiik* exactly.

M4 In place of *aap* substitute *vee* they/he/she *doost* friend *naukar* servant. In place of *chaataa* umbrella substitute *sveṭar* sweater, *ṣaal* shawl *ṭoopii* cap *lakḍii* stick.

LEARNER'S NOTE

Natural calamities occur in all the countries. A few years ago, Turkey experienced a terrible earthquake. In 2001 India experienced. In 2002 Afganistan had a severe tremor. There is no way to predict this and take precautionary measures. In India natural calamities are Floods during rainy season, sun stroke during summer, cold wave deaths in winter and contageous diseases are common.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

jaan	*aaṭh*	*das*	*dinõõ*	*mẽẽ*	*kaam*	*puuraa*	*kareegaa*
John	8	10	days	in	work	complete	will do

John will complete the work in 8 or 10 days.

pichlee	*saal*	*bhuukamp*	*mẽe*	*gujraat*	*mẽe*
Previous	year	earthquake	in	Gujrat	in

hazaarõo	*loog*	*mar gayee*
thousands	people	died

Last year thousands of people died in Gujrat in earthquake

dillii	*beṅgḷuur see*	*kariib*	*ḍeeḍh hazaar miil*	*hai*
Delhi	Bangalore from	approximately	1½ thousand miles	is

Delhi is about 1500 miles from Bangalore.

aap	*meeree*	*liyee*	*eek*	*chaataa*	*laayẽegee*
you	my	for	one	umbrella	will bring

You will bring an umbrella for me.

SUPPLEMENT

1. Make a list of Natural calamities in the past ten years in different parts of the world.
2. Make Three sentences using each of the following words.

bhuukamp	Eathquake
bhuucaal	Tempest
zalzalaa	Volcano
baaḍh	Floods
haijaa	Plague
visuuicikaa	Cholera

———o———

CYCLE - 32

Topical Focus : Frequent actions.

Grammatical Focus : Active Passive & impersonal voices.

Interrogative : *kyaa kiyaa jaay*
What is to be done.

Rituals : *maanee yaa na maanee*
Whether (you) agree or not

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *mai rooz suba caar mill sair kartaa hũu* - I walk four miles daily in the morning.

M2 *ussee taalaab mẽe tairaa nahii gayaa* - He could not swim in the tank

M3 *roojaa see eek din mẽe baḍii kitaab paḍhii nahii jaatii* - Big book cannot be read by Roja in one day

M4	*musaafirõõ nee soocaa ki nadii paar karneekee liyee kyaa kiyaa jaay ?*	- Passengers thought what is to be done for crossing the river
M5	*aap rooz kab sair kartee haĩ ?*	- When do you walk daily?
M6	*maĩ rooz suba sair kartaa-hũũ*	I walk daily in the morning.
M7	*aap rooz kitnii duur sair kartee haĩ ?*	- How far do you walk every day ?
M8	*ussee kahãã tairaa nahii gayaa ?*	- Where could he not swim ?
M9	*roojaa see kyaa padḥaa nahii jaataa ?*	- What could not be read by Roja ?
M10	*musaafirõõnee kyaa soocaa ?*	- What did the Passengers think ?
	ladḳeenee apnee doost see kahaa ki aap maanee yaa na maanee maĩ zaruur kriket kheelnee jaaũũgaa	- The boy told his friend "Whether you agree or not I will go to play cricket."

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*tum rooz kab sair kartee-hoo ?*	- When do you go for walk daily?
	B	*maĩ rooz suba sair karũũgaa*	- I walk daily in the morning
	A	*tum rooz kitnii duur sair kartee hoo ?*	- How long do you walk every day?
	B	*maĩ rooz suba caar miil-sair kartaa hũũ*	- I walk four miles every day morning.

C2	A	*voo taalaab kee paas kyõõ gayii ?*	- Why did she go near the tank?
	B	*voo tairnee kee liyee taalaab kee paas gayii*	- She went near the tank to swim
	A	*voo kyõõ nahii tairtii*	- Why dose she not swim?
	B	*ussee taalaab mẽẽ tairaa nahii jaataa kyõõki taalaab mẽẽ paanii gahraa hai*	She cant swim in the tank because tank water is (quite) deep.
C3	A	*Roojaa kyaa kar rahii hai ?*	- What is Roja doing ?
	B	*voo kitaab padh rahii hai*	- She is reading a book.
	A	*voo lagaataar kyõõ padḥ rahii hai ?*	- Why is she reading continuously ?
	B	*kitaab baḍii hai, lagaataar nahii padḥii too voo baḍii kitaab eek din mẽẽ padḥii nahii jaatii*	- The book is big. If she does not read continuously the book cannot be read (completed) in one day.
C4	A	*musaafir kahãã gayee?*	- Where did the passengers go ?
	B	*vee nadii kinaaree gayee ?*	- They went to the river bed
	A	*unhoonee kyaa soocaa?*	- What did they think ?
	B	*unhoonee soocaa ki nadii paar karnee kee liyee kyaa kiyaa jaay ?*	- They thought what is to be done to cross the river.
	A	*eeknee kahaa ki eek naav ḍhuuṇḍḥ lẽẽ*	- One (Passenger) said that let us find a boat
	B	*duusreenee kahaa kooii maanee yaa na maanẽẽ maĩ too tair kar hii nadii paar karũũgaa*	- Another passenger said whether any body agrees or not I am going to swim & cross the river.

VOCABULARY

taalaab	Tank	*naanii*	grand mother (mother's mother)
tairnaa	To swim		
gahraa	Deep	*pariikṣaa*	Examination/test
musaafir	Traveller (s)	*coor*	Thief
nadii kinaaree	River bed	*tair kar hii*	Only by swimming
naav	Boat		
maan	consent / concur agree / accept	*upanyaas*	Novel
		samaapt hoona	To complete / finish / exhaust
ḍhũuṇḍhnaa	To search		
lagaataar	Continuously		
paar karnaa	To cross		
vakiil	Lawyer		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *maĩ* I substitute *tum / aap* you your *vidyaarthii* students *baccee* boys *laḍkiyãã* girls and make necessary changes.

M2 In place of *taalaab* tank substitute *kuãã* well, *nadii* river, *samudr* - sea

M3 *eek din mẽẽ* in one day substitute *eek ghanṭee mẽẽ* in one hour *doo din mẽẽ* in two days. In place of *baḍii kitaab* big book *baḍii kahaanii* long story *baḍaa upanyaas* long novel *naaṭak* drama.

M4 In place of *musaafir* travellers substitute *yaatrii* piligrims, *sanyaasiyõõ* monks, *loogõõ* People.

M5 In place of *aap* they substitute *vee* they / he / she *auratẽẽ* / women *vakiil* lawyers *buuḍhee* - old men / seniors

M6 In place of *sair karnaa* walk substitute *dauḍnaa* to run, *kasrat karnaa* to do exercsie *nahaanaa* to bathe.

LEARNER'S NOTE

maanee yaa na maanee whether agree / accept / concur / consent or not.

When some one is bent upon doing something whether others agree or not this expression is used.

e.g. *pitaajii nee beeṭee see kahaa " kooii manee yaa na maanee maĩ tumkoo imtahaan kee samaapt hootee tak kheelnee nahii dũũgaa*

Father told the son whether any body agrees or not I wont allow you to play until the exmns are over.

There are three voices in Hindi language just as in English

1) Active Voice
2) Passive Voice
3) Impersonal Voice

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

maĩ	*rooz*	*suba*	*caar*	*miil*	*sair*	*kartaa*	*hũũ*
I	Daily	morning	four	miles	walk	do	am

I walk daily four miles in the morning.

ussee	*taalaab*	*mẽẽ*	*tairaa*	*nahii*	*gayaa*
By her	Tank	in	swim	not	went

She could not swim in the tank.

Roojaa	*see*	*eek*	*din*	*mẽẽ*	*baḍii*	*kitaab*	*paḍhii*	*nahiĩ*	*jaatii*
Roja	by	one	day	in	big	book	read	no	gone

The big book cannot be read by Roja in one day

musaafirõõnee	*soocaa ki*	*nadii*	*paar*	*karnee*
Travellers	thought that	river	cross	doing

kee liyee	*kyaa*	*kiyaa*	*jaay*
for the sake	what	did	gone

Passengers thought what is to be done to cross the river.

1. In active voice subject predicate & object are necessary e.g.

   ladkaa aam khaataa hai
   Boy eats a mango

   To convert this into passive voice subject will become object & vice versa.

   Verb will be changed into past participle.

   Auxilary Verb jaa go to follow finite verb in appropriate tense.

   Verb will follow number & gender of the object. Sujbect will take see. So the sentenec *laḍkaa aam khaataa hai* in passive voice.

   aam laḍkee see khaayaa jaataa hai Mango is eaten by a boy.

2. To convert from passive into active the same steps to be followed in reverse order.

Passive e.g. *vidyaathiyõõ see naaṭak deekha gayaa*
Drama was seen by the students.

Active e.g. *vidyaarthiyõõnee naaṭak deekhaa*

3) When the object is absent or understood in a sentence impersonal voice takes place.

e.g. *musaafirõõnee soocaa ki nadii paar karnee kee liyee kyaa kiyaa jaay?*

SUPPLEMENT

Change the following into passive voice.

1. *Moohan duukaan see doo kitaabẽẽ laataa hai !*
2. *Saralaa hindii gaanee gaatii hai*
3. *naanii nee baccoonkoo kahaaniyãã sunaayiĩ*
4. *rameẽs nee caar keelee khaayee*
5. *puliis nee coor koo pakḍaa*

Change the following sentences into active voice.

1. *Vidyaathiyõõ see caar hindii paaṭh paḍhee gayee*
2. *gyaara khilaaḍiyõõsee kriket kheelaa jaataa hai*
3. *doostõõsee kannaḍ sinemaa deekhaa gayaa*
4. *vidyaarthiyõõsee aglee mahiinee parikṣaa lii jaayeegii*
5. *javiid see rooṭii khaayii jaa rahii hai*

Study the following sentences & phrases.

kyaa kiyaa jaay ?	What is to be done ?
kyõõ padhaa jaay ?	Why should (it) be read?
kyaa kahaa jaay ?	What is to be told ?

———o———

CYCLE - 33

Topical Focus : Instructions / Discipline commands.

Grammatical Focus : *nee par bhii* ..... inspite of .... Adverbial phrase

Interrogative : *kahnee par bhii kyõõ nahiĩ kiyaa*
Inspite of telling Why did you not do

Rituals : *baal baal bac gayaa*
Very narrowly, escaped.

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *pitaajii kee manaa karnee par bhii laḍkaa nadii mẽẽ tairnee gayaa aur ḍuub gayaa* - In spite of father restricting (son) boy went to swim in the river and drowned.

M2 *maasṭar kee kahnee par bhii vidyaarthiyõõnee* - Even though the teachers were telling,

	khuub nahiĩ padḥaa aur imtahaan mẽẽ anuttirṇ hoo gayee	Students did not study well & failed in the examination
M3	*baar baar kahnee par bhii naujavaan suntee nahiĩ aur šaraab piitee haĩ*	- Though repeatedly warned (by elders) youths do not listen & drink liquor
M4	*basmẽẽ jaatee vakt gaḍḍhee mẽẽ girgayaa par caalak baal baal bac gayaa*	- While going in a bus, it fell into a pit & the driver very narrowly escaped.
M5	*pitaajiikee manaa karnee par bhii laḍkaa kahã̃ gayaa aur kyaa huaa ?*	- Inspite of father's warning where did the boy go & what happend (to him) ?
M6	*maastarkee kahnee par bhii vidyaarthiyõonee kyaa kiyaa aur uskaa parinaam kyaa huaa ?*	- Inspite of teacher's warning what did the students do and what was the result ?
M7	*baar baar kahnee par bhii naujavaan kyaa kartee haĩ ?*	- Inspite of repeatedly saying what do the youths do ?(without listening)
M8	*bas kahã̃ giraa aur caalak koo kyaa huaa ?*	- Where did the bus fall (into) and what happened to the driver?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*laḍkaa kahã̃ gayaa ?*	- Where did the boy go ?
	B	*laḍkaa nadii kinaaree gayaa*	- Boy went to the river bed.

	A	*kisnee manaa kiyaa ?*	- Who prevented him ?
	B	*pitaajii nee manaa kiyaa*	- Father prevented him
	A	*laḍkee nee kyaa kiyaa?*	- What did the boy do ?
	B	*laḍkaa nadii mẽẽ tairnee lagaa*	- Boy started swimming in the river.
C1	A	*usee tairnaa aataa thaa ?*	- Was he knowing swimming ?
	B	*aataa thaa leekin acchii tarah nahiĩ aataa thaa*	- He was knowing, but not well.
	A	*phir kyaa huaa ?*	- What happened then ?
	B	*voo nadii mẽẽ ḍuub gayaa*	- He drowned in the river
C2	A	*maastarnee vidyaarthiyõon see kyaa kahaa ?*	- What did the master tell the students ?
	B	*maastar nee vidyaarthiyõosee kahaa "khuub padḥoo, imtahaan nazdiik hai*	- Master told the students "study well examination is fast approaching
C3	A	*vidyaarthiyõonee kyaa kiyaa ?*	- What did the students do ?
	B	*baar baar kahnee par bhii vidyaarthiyõõ nee khuub nahiĩ padḥaa*	- Inspite of teacher telling repeatedly the students did not study hard.
	A	*natiijaa kyaa huaa ?*	- What was the result ?
	B	*vidyaarthii imtahaan mẽẽ anuttiirṇ hoo gayee*	- (Consequently) students failed in the examination.
C4	A	*bas kaa caalak kyaa kar rahaa thaa ?*	- What was the bus driver doing ?
	B	*caalak bus calaa rahaa thaa*	- Driver was driving the bus
	A	*tab kyaa huaa ?*	- What happened then ?

B	*tab bus eek gaḍḍhee mẽẽ giraa*	- Then the bus fell into a pit
A	*caalak koo kyaa huaa ?*	- What happened to the driver ?
B	*caalak baal baal bac gayaa*	- Driver was saved very narrowly.

VOCABULARY

baal baal bac jaanaa	To very narrowly escape from danger		
..... *nee par bhii*	Inspite of ..... ing		
manaa karnaa	Refuse / deny / oppose not to give consent/permission		
uttiirṇ	pass	caacaa	uncle
anuttiirṇ	Fail	ṭharraa	country
śaraab (F)	Liquor		liquor
gaḍḍhaa (M)	Pit		
gir jaanaa	To fall (into)		
baar baar	Again & again (Repeatedly)		
Parinaam	Result		
caalak	Driver		
ḍuubnaa	To drown		
samjhaanaa	Convince		
lakḍii	Wood / plank		
maar	Beat		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *pitaajii* Father substitute *masstar* maastar *neetaa* leader *doost* friend. In place of *tairnee* swimming substitute *nahaanee* bathing *kapḍaa dhoonee* washing the clothes *kheelnee* playing.

M2 In place of *maastar* substitute *pitaajii* father *caacaa* uncle *doost* friend *baḍee* elders.

M3 In place of *baar baar* again & again substitute *bahut baar* many times *rooz* daily *din raat* day and night.

In place of *śaraab* liquor substitute *sigreet* cigrette, *ṭharraaa* country liquor.

M4 In place of *bus mẽẽ* in the bus substitute *kaar mẽẽ* in the car *laarii mẽẽ* in the truck *skuutar par* on the scooter. In place of *gaḍḍhee mẽẽ* in the pit substitute *nadiimẽẽ* in the river, *taalaab mẽẽ* in the tank *kuẽẽ mẽẽ* in the well *khaaii mẽẽ* in the valley.

In place of *caalak* driver substitute *yaatrii* traveller, *vidyaarthii* student *laḍkii* girl.

LEARNER'S NOTE

vidyaarthii is common noun meaning student both boy student and girl student. When we have to exclusively refer to girl student *vidyaarthinii* in sg. and *vidyaarthiniyãã* in plural is used. In nominative case singular it is *vidyaarthii/* M & F *vidyarthinii.*

When case sign is added in plural

vidyarthiyõõkoo	To the students masculine
vidyaarthiniyõõkoo	To the students feminine

Now a days in India also younger generation wont listen to the parents and grand parents, due to generation gap. But even good things they dont listen to because of the generation gap. Many a time younger ones will be in trouble for not listening to the elders.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

pitaajiikee	*manaa*	*karnee*	*par bhii*	*laḍkaa*	*nadiimẽe*
Father's	prevent	doing	on also	boy	river in

tairnee	*gayaa*	*aur ḍuub*	*gayaa*
swimming	went	& drown	went

Inspite of father's warning boy went to the river for swimming and drowned.

maasṭarkee	*kahneepar*	*bhii*	*vidyaarthiiyõonee*			*khuub*	
maaster's	saying on	also	students			well	
nahii	*paḍhaa*	*aur*	*imtahaan*	*mẽe*	*anuttirṇ*	*hoo*	*gayee*
not	read	&	examination	in	fail	become	went

Inspite of warning by the teacher students did not study well & failed in the examination.

jaatee	*vakt*	*bas*	*gaḍḍhee*	*mẽe*	*gir*	*gayaa*	*aur*
Going	time	bus	pit	in	fall	went	&

caalak	*baal*	*baal*	*bac*	*gayaa*
driver	hair	hair	saved	went

While going the bus fell into a pit but the driver very narrowly escaped.

baal baal bacnaa is an idiom. This is used when some one escaped very narrowly from danger. Danger could be total death too e.g. *mallah ḍuub rahaa thaa ṭhiik usii vakt uskee haath koo eek lakḍii milii usee pakaḍkar kinaaree aayaa voo baal baal bac gayaa.* Boat man was drowning and at that time there was a plank. Holding that he came to the shore. He very narrowly escaped.

SUPPLEMENT

1. ..... *nee par bhii* to be added to the root of the verb and the verb becomes a gerund. This is only an Adverbial clause or phrase and the tense gender and no will be determined by the finite verb which follows.
2. Form sentences of your own by using the following phrases.
   1. *manaa karnee par bhii*
   2. *samjhaanee par bhii*
   3. *paḍhnee par bhii*
   4. *maarnee par bhii*
   5. *kahaanee par bhii*

———o———

CYCLE - 34

Topical Focus : Continuous actions and routine coversations.

Grammatical Focus : Past Participle used as adjective adverbs and noun phrase.

Interrogative : *baiṭhee baiṭhee vee kahãa calee gayee ?*
was sitting, where did he go ?

Rituals : *samjhee binaa* without knowing / understanding.

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *laḍkii paḍhtee paḍhtee soo gayii* - The girl slept while reading.

M2 *tumhaaraa doost khaanaa-khaayee binaa calaa gayaa* - Your friend went away without having meal.

M3 *Paḍhii huii kitaab peeṭii mẽe hai* - Read book (Book which is already read) is in the box.

M4	*tum kaaleej jaatee huuee - meree ghar aaoo*	**You come to my house while going to college (on the way to college)**
M5	*ladḳii kab soo gayii ?* -	**When did the girl sleep?**
M6	*tumhaaraa doost khaanaa khaakar gayaa ?*	**Did your friend go (after) taking meal ?**
M7	*peeṭii mẽe kaunsii kitaabẽe hai ?* -	**Which books are in the box ?**
M8	*tum kab meeree ghar aaoogee* -	**When will you come to my house ?**

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*ladḳii kamree mẽe kyaa kar rahii hai ?* -	What is the girl doing in the room?
	B	*voo padḥ rahii hai* -	She is reading
	A	*kuch bhii aavaaz nahii sunaaii deetii* -	No voice (noise) is heard.
	B	*šaayad padḥtee padḥtee soo gayii* -	Perhaps while reading she went to sleep.
C2	A	*tumhaaraa doost kahã hai ?* -	Where is your friend ?
	B	*baahar gayaa hai* -	(He) Has gone out
	A	*khaanaa khaayee binaa calaa gayaa ?* -	Went away without taking meal ?
	B	*šaayad baahar khaataa hoogaa* -	Perhaps (he)may eat out
C3	A	*kitaab kahã hai ?* -	Where is the book ?
	B	*voo too peeṭii mẽe hai* -	It is in the box.

	A	*meez par bhii too kitaabẽe hai* -	There are books on the table also.
	B	*yee kitaabẽe abhii padḥii nahii hai* -	These books are still not read
	A	*peeṭii mẽe rahnee vaalii kitaab padḥii huii hai na?* -	Book in the box is already read is n't it ?
	B	*hã padḥii huii kitaabẽe peeṭii mẽe rakhtaa hũ* -	Yes, I keep the books already read in the box
C4	A	*tum meeree ghar kab aaoogee ?* -	When will you come to my house ?
	B	*aaj too fursat nahii* -	To day I have no free time.
	B	*kal kyaa kaam hai ?* -	What work do you have tomorrow ?
	A	*kal kam see kam pãc minat kee liyee nahii aa sakoogee ?* -	Can't you come at least for 5 minutes tomorrow ?
	B	*suba kaaleej jaanaa hai kab aaũ* -	I have to go to college in the morning. when to come?
	A	*aree kaaleej jaatee huee ghar aa jaanaa* -	Oh come on, come while going to the college
	B	*koošiš karũgaa* -	I will try.

VOCABULARY

Fursat	(Free) time
kam see kam	At least
koošiš	Effort
khaayee binaa	without eating
padḥii huii kitãb	Book already read
peeṭii	Box

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *ladkii* girl substitute *ladkaa* Boy *pitaajii* father *vakiil* Lawyer *auratẽe* women and make necessary changes in the verb.

In place of *padhtee padhtee* while reading substitute *kheeltee kheeltee* while playing *gaatee gaatee* while singing.

M2 In place of *doost* substitute behan sister *bhatiijaa* nephew *maataajii* mother & make necessary change in the verb.

In place of *khaayee binaa* without eating *kahee binaa* without saying *nahaayee bina* without bathing *kaagaz diyee binaa* without giving the paper *saamaan liyee binaa* without taking the luggage.

M3 In place of *padhii huii kitaab* read book (past tense) *khariidii huii* kitaab Bought book *phaadii huii kitaab* torn book *badlii huii kitaab* changed book.

M4 In place of *tum* substitute *voo* he she & it make necessary changes in the verb (aavee)

In place of *kaaleej jaatee huee* while going to the college *duukaan jaatee huee* while going to the shop, *daftar jaatee huee* while going to the office.

LEARNER'S NOTE

Past form of the verb with *ee* followed by binaa will become adverbial. clause / phrase and the following finite verb will determine the number gender & tense of the verb.

kar	*kiyaa*	*kiyee*	+ *binaa*
deekh	*deekhaa*	*deekhee*	+ *binaa*
likh	*likhaa*	*likheee*	+ *binaa*

samjhee binaa without understanding

Many a time younger ones will not understand what elders are saying. Youngters will be saying some unconnected things then the elders will say.

sooc samajh kar jawaab doo think and understand (what I am saying) and then answer.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

ladkii	*padhtee*	*padhtee*	*soo*	*gayii*
Girl	reading	reading	sleep	went

Girl went to sleep (as she was) while reading

tumhaaraa	*doost*	*khaanaa*	*khaayee*	*binaa*	*calaa*	*gayaa*
your	*friend*	*Meal*	*ate*	*without*	*went*	*gone*

Your friend went away without having meal.

padhii	*huii*	*kitaab*	*peetii*	*mẽe*	*hai*
Read	over	book	box	in	is

Already read book is in the box.

tum	*kaaleej*	*jaatee*	*huee*	*meeree*	*ghar*	*aaoo*
you	college	go	ing	my	house	come

While going to the college you come to my house.

1. *padhee binaa* without reading
   gaayee binaa without singing
   davaa piyee binaa without drinking medicine

In all these phrases verb is used by adding *ee binaa* to the past stem is used as adverb. They are not subjected to any change. Only the subject & the finite verb following the phrase will determine the verb form.

E.g. *gaurii aaj gaayee binaa ghar nahiĩ jaa saktii*
Gowri cannot go home to-day without singing

Instead of *gaurii* if the subject is *raam Raam gaṇeẽ* Ganesh *gavaiyee* musicians *gaayee binaa* will not change.

kartee huẽe while doing *jaatee huẽe* while going *dauḍ tee huẽe* while running. These indicate continuous incomplete actions followed by another finite verb which will agree with the subject in No & gender.

SUPPLEMENT

Frame three sentences using each of the following phrases in different tenses.

deekhtee	*deekhtee*	While (going on) seeing
suntee	*suntee*	" " hearing
khaatee	*khaatee*	" " eating
kheeltee	*kheeltee*	" " playing

jaatee	*huee*	while going
likhtee	*huee*	" writing
sunaa huuaa gaanaa		(Already) heard song
paḍhii huii kahaanii		(" ") read story
sikhaayee huee paaṭh		(" ") taught lesson

PRACTISE

ikaasii	81
bayaasii	82
tiraasii	83
cauraasii	84
pacaasii	85
chiyaasii	86
sataasii	87
aṭhaasii	88
navaasii	89
nabbee	90

———o———

CYCLE - 35

Topical Focus : Some geographical items

Grammatical Focus : Focus

Degrees of Comparison
see - see baḍaa bigger than
subsee baḍaa biggest of all
see baḍhkar more than
sabse baḍhkar more than all

Interrogative : *sab see baḍaa kyaa hai ?*
What is the biggest .... of all

Rituals : *aisii kyaa musiibat aa gayii ?*
What is the problem (difficulty) now ?

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *kaaveerii baḍii nadii hai* - Cauvery is a large river

M2 *gaṅgaa nadii ussee bhii baḍii hai* - River Ganges is still larger than that (Cauvery)

M3	*duniyaa mẽe nail nadii sabsee badi (nadii) hai*	Nail is the longest river in the world
M4	*himaalay see ũuncaa pahaad duusra kooii nahii hai*	No other mountain is as high as the Himalayas in the world
M5	*hindustaan mẽe kolkata sahar sabsee badaa sahar hai*	Kolkata is the biggest city in India.
M6	*karnaatak mẽe kaunsii nadii badii hai ?*	Which is the largest river in Karnataka ?
M7	*kaaveerii see badii nadii bhaarat mẽe kaunsii hai?*	Which river is longer than Cauvery in India ?
M8	*duniyã mẽe sabsee lambii nadii kaunsii hai ?*	Which is the longest river in the world.
M9	*sabsee ũuncaa pahaad kaunsaa hai ?*	Which is the highest mountain (in the world)
M10	*himaalay see ũucaa pahaad duusraa koii hai?*	Is there any other mountain higher than the Himalayas ?
M11	*hindustaan mẽe sab see badaa sahar kaunsaa hai?*	Which is the largest city in India ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*kaveerii nadii kahã (see) nikaltii hai ?*	Where does the river Cauvery rise (from) ?
	B	*kodagu jileekee baaga--mandal see nikaltii hai*	This (river) rises from Bagamandala in Coorg District
	A	*yahii eek badii nadii hai ?*	Is this (alone) the only big river ?

	B	*hã karnaatak raajy mẽe yahii sab see badii nadii hai*	Yes this is the biggest river in the state of Karnataka.
C2	A	*duniyãmẽe sabsee lambii nadii kaunsii hai?*	Which is the longest river in the world ?
	B	*amezaan nadii duniyaa mẽe sabsee badii hai*	River Amezan is the longest river in the world.
C3	A	*amezaan nadii badii nahii hai ?*	Is Amezan not a big river ?
	B	*voo bahut badii hai*	It is a very big river.
	A	*Nail nadii kahã bahtii hai ?*	Where does the river Nile flow ?
	B	*nail nadii misr mẽe bahtii hai*	River Nile flows in Egypt.
C4	A	*karnaatak mẽe kaunsaa pahaad hai ?*	Which hill is in Karnataka ?
	B	*Karnaatak mẽe nandii baabaabudangiri aadi kaii chootee chootee pahaad hai*	In Karnatak there are several small mountains (hillocks) like Nandi & Bababudangiri
	A	*bahut badee pahaadkoo-kyaa kahtee hai ?*	What is the biggest Hill (mountain) called
	B	*bahut badee pahaadkoo-parvat kahtee hai*	Bigest Hill is called mountain.
	A	*voo kahã hai ?*	Where is that ?
	B	*voo bhaarat mẽe hai*	That is in India.
	A	*bhaaratmẽe kahã hai?*	Where is it in India ?
	B	*bharat kee uttar mẽe himaalay pahaad hai joo duniyaa mẽe sab see ũucaa hai*	To the north of India there is the Himalaya mountain which is the tallest /highest in the world.

C5	A	*karnaaṭak kii raajdhaanii kaunsaa šahar hai*	Which city is the capital of Karnataka (state)
	B	*karnaaṭak kii raajdhaanii bengluuru šahar hai*	Capital of karnataka is Bangalore city.
	A	*kyaa voo baḍaa šahar hai ?*	Is it a big city ?
	B	*haã karnaatak meẽ ya baḍaa šahar hai*	It is a big city in Karnataka
	A	*hindustaan meẽ sab see baḍaa šahar kaunsaa hai ?*	Which is the biggest city in India
	B	*hindustaan meẽ kolkaṭaa sabsee baḍaa šahar hai*	Kolkata is the biggest city in India.

VOCABULARY

nadii	River
pahaad	Hill
pahaaḍii	Hillock / Hilly tribe
see/see badhakar	than
sabsee	.....est of all
bah	Flow
Misr	Egypt
raajdhaanii	Capital
šahar	City
prapaat	Falls
saroovar	Lake
Parvat	Mountain

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *kaaveeri nadii* Cauvery river substitute *paalaar nadii, pennaar nadii* palar river, pennaar river and substitute *baḍi* big with *chooṭii* small.

M2 *gangaa nadii* to be substituted by *sindhuu nadii* river Indus. In place of *ussee bhii badii hai* bigger than that *ussee bhii chooṭii hai* smaller than that.

M3 In place of *nail nadii* Nail river substitute *amezaan nadii* - In place of *nail nadii* River Nile substitute *nayaagaraa prapaat* Nayaagaraa Falls.

M4 In place of *himaalay see ũucaa pahaad* taller than the Himalayan Mountain substitute *nyuuyaark see baḍaa šahar* bigger than New york city.

M5 In place of *Kolkaṭaa šhahar* Calcutta city *uttar pradeeš*. In place of *šahar* substitute *raajy* - state.

LEARNER'S NOTE

kaun who. This interrogative pronoun is used to elicit human nouns in answer

There is no seperate single word in Hindi for which or which one *kaun* who takes the particle *saa* to elicit the non human answers. This is a marked non human interrogative which has three forms

kaunsaa Which sg. masculine

kaunsee Which pl. masculine

kaunsii Which sg & pl. Feminine

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

kaaveerii	*nadii*	*baḍii*	*hai*
Cauvery	river	big	is

Cauveri is a big river.

duniyaa	*mẽe*	*nail*	*nadii*	*bahut*	*baḍii*	*hai*
World	in	Nile	river	one of the	biggest	is

Nile is the biggest river (in the world)

himaalaysee	*ũucaa*	*pahaaḍ*	*duusraa*	*koii*	*nahii*	*hai*
Himalaya than	higher	mountain	second	any	not	is

No other mountain (in the world) is as high as the Himalayas.

hindustaan	*mẽe*	*kolkaṭaa*	*śahar*	*sabsee*	*baḍaa*
India	in	Calcutta	city	all of	big
śahar	*hai*				
city	is				

Calcutta is the biggest city in (the whole of) India.

1. *see* followed by an adjective form the comparative degree.

   beṅgluuru maisuur see baḍaa hai
   Bangalore is bigger than Mysore see is followed by an adjective *baḍaa.*

2. If *sabsee* (of all) followed by an adjective we form the superlative degree.

e.g.

nyuuyaark	*dunyiyaã*	*mẽe*	*sabsee*	*baḍaa*	*śahar*	*hai*
New york	world	in	of all	big	city	is

Newyork is the biggest city in the world.

This can also be expressed in another way.

E.g. *nyuuyaark jitnaa baḍaa śahar hai utnaa baḍaa śahar duniyaa mẽe kooii our śahar nahii hai.* No other city in the world is as big as Newyork.

SUPPLEMENT

Translate the following into English :-

1. *tumhaaree ghar mẽe sab see baḍee kaun hai ?*
2. *raakii pahaaḍ utnaa ũucaa nahii hai jitnaa himaalay hai*
3. *amerikaa mẽe sab see baḍaa śahar kaunsaa hai ?*
4. *aasṭreeliaa sabsee chooṭaa khaṇḍ / mahaadviip hai*
5. *duniyaã kii kooii nadii itnii lambii nahii hai jitnii lambii nail nadii hai*

PRACTISE THE FOLLOWING NOS.

ikaanabee	91
baanabee	92
tiraanabee	93
cauraanabee	94
pacaanabee	95
chiyaanabee	96
sataanabee	97
aṭhaanabee	98
ninyaanabee	99
sau	100

———o———

CYCLE - 36

Topical Focus : Follow elders, obey orders compound actions.

Grammatical Focus : Compound sentences using *Jaisee - & vaisee*
As so

Rituals : *jaisii karnii vaisii bharnii*
As you sow so you reap

Interrogative : *kaisee,* Adverb
kaisee Adjective

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *badoonkii baat maannii caahiyee* - We should listen to the elders.

M2 *jaisee kaam kartee hai vaisee phal miltaa hai* - As we do so we get the result. As we sow, so we reap

M3 *adhyaapak jaisee kaheengee vidyaarthii vaisee kareengee* - As the teachers say so the students do

M4	*jaisii karnii vaisi bharnii*	As we sow, so we reap
M5	*kiskii baat maannii caahiyee ?*	Whose words should (we) obey ?
M6	*hamkoo kaisaa phal miltaa hai ?*	What kind of result do we get (for our work)
M7	*vidyaarthiyoṅkoo kiskee kahee anusaar kaam karnaa hoogaa ?*	Students should work according to whose instructions ?
M8	*dhookhaa deenee par dhookhaa khaanaa bhii paḍtaa hai*	When we cheat (others) we will also be cheated

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*baccoṅkoo kyaa karnaa caahiyee*	What should the children do ?
	B	*baccõokoo baḍoṅ kii baat maannii caahiyee*	Children should listen (obey) to the elders.
	A	*kyõo maannii caahiyee?*	Why should they obey?
	B	*kyõoki baḍee loog joo bhii kahee baccõokii bhalaaii kee liyee kahtee haĩ*	Because whatever the elders ask the children to do is only for good of the children
C2	A	*buraa kaam karnee see kyaa miltaa hai ?*	What will (we) get by doing bad work ?
	B	*buraa kaam karnee see buraa phal miltaa hai*	By doing bad work we get the bad result.
	A	*acchaa kaam karnee see kyaa miltaa hai ?*	What do we get by doing good work ?
	B	*acchaa kaam karnee see acchaa phal miltaa hai*	By doing good work we get good results.

C3	A	*vidyaarthii skuul mẽe kyaa siikhtee haĩ ?*	What do the students learn in the school ?
	B	*vidyaarthii skuul mẽe paaṭh siikhtee haĩ*	Students learn lessons in the school
	A	*unkoo kaun sikhaataa haĩ ?*	Who teaches them ?
	B	*unkoo adhyaapak sikhaatee haĩ*	Teacher teaches them
	A	*vee kaisee siikhtee haĩ ?*	How do they learn
	B	*adhyaapak jaisee kaheeṅgee vidyarthii vaisee kareeṅgee aur paaṭh siikheeṅgee*	Students will do what ever(as) the teacher says & will learn the lessons
C4	A	*moohan ganeeśkoo maaraa*	Mohan hit Ganesh
	B	*Ganeeś kee doost moohankoo maaree*	Ganeh's friends hit Mohan
	A	*moohan koo kyaa huaa*	What happened to Mohan ?
	B	*moohan kii ṭaãg ṭuuṭ gayii jaisii karnii vaisii bharnii*	Mohan broke his leg As you sow, so you reap.

VOCABULARY

maannaa	Accept (obey)	*natiijaa*	Result
bhalaaii	Good	*samajhdaar*	Learned
buraa	Bad	*anubhavii*	Experienced
acchaa	Good	*bhalaa*	Good
phal / natiijaa	Result	*puny*	Noble / pious
jaisee	As	*udyoogpati*	Industrialist
vaisee	so	*maalik*	owner
ṭaãg	leg	*mazduur*	Labourer

ṭuṭ	Broken	*paap*	Sin
jaisii karnii	As you sow	*aamdanii*	Income
vaisii bharnii	so you reap	*kharcaa*	expenses
andhaa	Blind personM	*kalaa*	Art / skill
madad	help	*praviin*	Expert

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *badõonkii* elders substitute *maataa - pitaa* parents *adhyaapak* teachers *samjhdaar loog* learned people *anubhavii loog* experienced people.

In place of *maannii caahiyee* must listen to *paalan karnii* obey accept.

M2 In place *jaisee* substitute *bhalaa* good. In place of *phal* substitute *natiijaa* result.

M3 In place *adhyaapak* teacher *badee loog* elderly people. In place of *adhyaapak vidyaarthii* Teacher - student substitute *udyoogpati* industralist / *maalik*, owner ... *mazduur* labourer.

M4 In place of *jaisii karnii vaisii bharnii* substitute similar saying

e.g.
andhee kii madad karna puṇykaa kaam hai
Helping the blind is a noble task.

jaanvaroṅkoo maar daalnaa paap kaa kaam hai
Killing animals is a sinful act.

LEARNER'S NOTE

jaisii karnii vaisii bharnii As you do so you fill is the literal meaning.

Here the statement reveals that we get the type of result in proportion to the effort we put to achive some thing. Similarly there are several idioms in Hindi language also as in other languages which do not convey the word by word meaning.

e.g. 36 *chattiiskaa farak.* Difference of 36. While writing this in Hindi Nos. three & six are written in the same way but in opposite directions. This means at Logger heads *aatankavaadii aur prajaa mẽe chattiis kaa farak hai.*

(There is a difference of 36) between terrorists & the people.

opp. : of this idiom is another idiom. In Hindi it is called muhaaviraa - idiom.

coolii daaman kaa saath literally this means blouse and & saree edge. They will always be clinging to each other that means close friendship.

amerikaa aur bhaarat mẽe coolii daaman kaa saath hai aur Iraq aur Kuvaait mẽe chattiis kaa Farak hai America & India are close friends and Iraq & Kuwait are at logger heads.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

badoonkii	*baat*	*maannii*	*caahiyee*
elders of	word	accept	want

We must listen to the elders (obey)

jaisee	*kaam*	*kartee*	*hai*	*vaisee*	*phal*	*miltaa*	*hai*
As	work	do	are	so	Fruit	get	is

We get result in accordance with our work.

adhyaapak	*jaisee*	*kaheeṅgee*	*vidyaarthii*	*vaisee*	*kareeṅgee*
Teacher	as	will say	students	so	will do

As the teacher will say & so the students will do.

jaisii	*karnii*	*vaisii*	*bharnii*
As	doing	so	filling

As you sow, so you reap.

SUPPLEMENT

Translate into English :-

1. *teez daudṇee vaalaa hoodṃẽe jiittaa hai aur dhiree daudṇee vaalaa haartaa hai*
2. *ya spardhaa kaa yug hai*
3. *jaisee jaisee badḍee hootee jaatee haĩ vaisee vaisee jimmeedaarii badḥtii jaatii hai*
4. *kisiibhii kalaa mẽe jaisee jaisee abhyaas kartee jaayeṅgee vaisee vaisee (usmẽe) praveeṇ bantee jaayeṅgee*
5. *jaisee jaisee aamdanii badḥtii hai, vaisee vaisee kharcaa bhii badḥtaa hai*

Use Six idioms in your own Hindi sentences.

———o———

CYCLE - 37

Topical Focus : Emotions & Actions.

Grammatical Focus : Productive verbs / auxilary in different meanings *kar* do *lag* begin *paḍ* happen *khaa* eat

Interrogative : *kyaa karnaa paḍtaa hai*
What is to be done ?
What all things to be done ?

Rituals : *muusaldhaar varṣaa* very heavy rain / rains cats & dogs.

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *khilaaḍiyoṅkoo maic mẽe jiitnee keeliyee bahut mehnat karnii paḍtii hai* - Players have to struggle very hard to win the match.

M2 *dil lagaakar kaam karnee see aadmii safal hootaa hai* - Man will become successful (in his work) by putting heart and soul into his work.

M3	*ladkaa fisalkar gir gayaa aur pa~av me~e coot lagii*	-	Boy slipped & fell down & got hurt in leg.
M4	*naadaan loog aasaanii see dhookhaa khaatee hai*	-	Innocent people get cheated easily.
M5	*maic me~e jiitnee kee liyee khilaadiyo~onkoo kyaa karnaa padtaa hai ?*	-	What should the players do to win in the match?
M6	*aadmii kyaa karneesee apnee kaam me~e safal hoo jaataa hai*	-	By doing what, man will succeed in his work ?
M7	*ladkee kee pa~av me~e kyoo coot lagii ?*	-	Why did the boy get hurt in the leg ?
M8	*kaun aasaaniisee dhookhaa khaatee hai*	-	Who gets cheated easily ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*kriket kee khilaadii kyaa kartee hai ?*	-	What do the cricket players do ?
	B	*vee rooz mehnat karkee abhyaas kartee hai*	-	They practise every day by doing hardwork
	A	*unkoo rooz kyo~o abhyaas karnaa padtaa hai ?*	-	Why should they practise every day
	B	*maic me~e jiitneekee liyee rooz abhyaas karnaa padtaa hai*	-	To win the match they should constantly (daily) keep practising
C2	A	*aadmii koo safal hoo--neekee liyee kyaa karnaa padtaa hai ?*	-	What should a person do to be succesful ?

	B	*aadmiikoo safal hoonee kee liyee mehnat karnii padtii hai*	-	To become succesful man should do hard work.
	A	*sirf mehnat kaafii hai?*	-	Just hard work will do?
	B	*sath saath dil bhii lagaanaa padeegaa?*	-	Must also work whole-heartedly
C3	A	*ladkaa kyo~o giraa ?*	-	Why did the boy fall ?
	B	*pa~av fisal gayaa aur gir gayaa*	-	leg slipped & fell
	A	*usee kyaa huaa ?*	-	What happened to him?
	B	*uskee pa~av me~e coot lag gayii.*	-	He got hurt in his leg.
C4	A	*buree loog kyaa kartee hai ?*	-	What do the bad people do ?
	B	*buree loog dhookhaa deetee hai*	-	Bad people cheat
	A	*vee kiskoo dhookhaa deetee hai ?*	-	Whom do they cheat ?
	B	*vee naadaan loogoonkoo dhookhaa deetee hai*	-	They cheat innocent people.
	A	*naadaan loog kyaa kartee hai ?*	-	What do the innocent people do ?
	B	*vee dhookhaa khaatee hai*	-	They get cheated.

VOCABULARY

pa~av	Leg
Fisal	Slip
gam	sorrow
pad	has to / must
naadaan	Innocent
coot lagnaa	to get hurt

gam khaanaa	to suffer
kaafii	sufficient
dil lagaakar	whole heartedly
dhookhaa khaanaa	to be cheated

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *khilaaḍiyoonkoo* for the players substitute *laḍkiyoonkoo* for the girls *naujavaanoonkoo* for the youths.

M2 In place of *dil lagaakar* whole heartedly substittue *śraddhaa see* - dedication, *aḍcanõõkii parvaah na karke* without caring for the obstacles. In place of *aadmii* person kooii bhii any body.

M3 In place of *laḍkaa* boy substitute *laḍkii* girl *baccee* boys, *kuttaa* dog *auratẽẽ* women make necessary changes in the verb.

In place of *pãav mẽẽ* in the leg substitute *haath mẽẽ* in the hand *eeḍii mẽẽ* in the knee *sir mẽẽ* in the head.

M4 In place of *naadaan loog* innocent people substitute *chooṭee baccee* small kids *laḍkiyãã* girls *anpaḍh loog* illiterates. In place of aasaanii see easily *muśkil see* with dfficulty. In place of *dhookhaa khaatee hai* will be cheated *muṣiibat jheeltee hai* face trouble *dhookhaa deetee hai* will cheat.

LEARNER'S NOTE

Use the following in your own sentences *apnaa kaam kiyaa kar* keep on doing your work

gam khaanaa	to under go suffering

khaa jaanaa	To eat away
karnaa paḍeega	must do (imperative)
voo tumkoo kyaa lagtii hai	How is she related to you
apnaa banaayaa khud khaaoo	Eat what you made. face the consequence of your doing
coot lagnaa	to get hurt
mahãgaa paḍnaa	Will cost very dear
apnaa kaam kiyaa kar	Keep on doing your job
caar lagaa doo (jamaa doo)	Give (him/her) fists.
aag lagnaa	Fire breakout
aag lagaanaa	To set fire
laaṭary lag gayii	Won the lottery
haath lagnaa	To be in one's hand to get
deenaa paḍṭaa hai	must give
jurmaanaa lagaayaa	was / were / fined
bhuukh lagnaa	To feel hungry
pyaas lagnaa	To feel thursty

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

khilaaḍiyoonkoo	*maic*	*mẽẽ*	*jiit*	*nee kee liyee*	*bahut*
players to	match	in	win	for the sake	much

mehnat	*karnii*	*paḍṭii hai*
hardwork	do	have to

Players must work hard to win the match.

dil	*lagaakar*	*kaam*	*karnee see*	*aadmii*	*safal*	*hootaa hai*
mind	putting	work	do by	man	successful	will is

Man will become successful by working whole heartedly.

laḍkaa	*fisalkar*	*gir gayaa*	*aur*	*pa~av*	*mẽẽ*	*coot̤*	*lagii*
Boy	slipping	fell	&	leg	in	hurt	happened

The boy slipped & fell & got his leg hurt.

naadaan	*loog*	*aasaanii*	*see*	*dhookhaa*	*khaatee*	*hai~*
Innocent	people	easily	by	cheat	eat	are

Innocent people are easily cheated.

SUPPLEMENT

Write three sentences using each of the following productive verbs in different context.

kar

lag

paḍ

———o———

CYCLE - 38

Topical Focus : Affixes & suffixes

Grammatical Focus : To give additional modified or opp meanings.

Interrogative : *kyaa jooḍneesee by adding what ?*

Rituals : *eek dam baḍhiyaa* Best, I class, superb.

MODEL SENTENCES

M1 *bhaarat kee raas̤tr̤apati Kalaam hai~* - President of India is (His Excellency) Sri Kalam.

M2 *bhaarat kee uparaas̤tr̤apati sree ṣeekhaavat hai~* - Vice President of India is Sree Sekhawat.

M3 *bhaarat kee pradhaan mantrii Vaajpeyjii hai~* - Prime Minister of India is Sree Vajpey.

M4	*bhaarat kee upapradhaan mantrii Advaanii jii hai ?*	- Sri Advanii is the Deputy Prime Minister of India?
M5	*bhaarat kee raaṣṭrapati kaun hai ?*	- Who is the President of India ?
M6	*bhaarat kee uparaaṣṭrapati kaun hai?*	- Who is the Vice - president of India ?
M7	*bhaarat kee pradhaan mantrii kaun hai*	- Who is the Prime Minister of India ?
M8	*bhaarat kee upapradhaan mantrii kaun hai?*	- Who is the Deputy Prime Minister of India?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*bhaaratkaa sarvoocc pad kaunsaa hai ?*	- Which is the top most position in India ?
	B	*Raaṣṭrapati kaa pad bhaarat kaa sarvoocc pad hai*	- President Post is the top most post in India.
	A	*ab raaṣṭrapati kaun hai ?*	- Who is the President now ?
	B	*ab smt. paatiil raṣṭrapati hai ?*	- Now Smt. Patil is the President (of India)
C2	A	*bhaarat gaṇatantr kee uparaaṣṭrapati kaun hai*	- Who is the Vice President of Indian Republic ?
	B	*bhaarat gaṇatantr kee uparaaṣṭrapati* srii *ansaariijii hai*	- Vice President of Indian Republic is Sree Ansarii
	A	*vee pahlee kyaa kaam kartee thee ?*	- What was he doing before ?
	B	*vee pahlee raajastaan kee mantrii thee*	- He was the Minister of Rajasthan state before.

C3	A	*bhaaratkee pradhaan mantrii kaun hai ?*	- Who is the Prime Minister of India ?
	B	*bhaarat kee pradhaan mantrii Dr. Man Moohan sing hai*	- Prime Minister of India is Dr. Man Mohan Sing
	A	*vee pahlee bhii kabhii pradhaan mantrii thee ?*	- Was he the Prime minister earlier also at (any time)?
	B	*nahii 1977 mee moraarjii deesaaii kee mantrimaṇḍal mee videeś mantrii thee*	- No he was the foreign Minister in Morarji Desai's Cabinet in 1977
C4	A	*bhaarat kee upapradhaan mantrii kaun hai ?*	- Who is the Deputy Prime Minister of India?
	B	*bhaarat kee virodhi paksh kee naayak srii el kee advaanii*	- The leader of opposition is Sri L.K. Advani
	A	*agar pradhaan mantrii koo kuch hoo jaay too kaam kaun sambhaaleegaa ?*	- If some thing happens to the Prime MInister who will manage the Affairs.
	B	*thoodee samaykeeliyee griha mantrii sambhaaleengee*	- For sometime the Home Minister will manage.

VOCABULARY

raaṣṭrapati	President (of a country)
uparaaṣṭrapati	Vice President (of a country)
pradhaan mantrii	Prime Minister
upa pradhaan mantrii	Deputy Prime Minister
gaṇatantr	Republic
sarvoocc pad	Top most position

sthaan	Position
Grihamantrii	Home Minister
mantrimaṇḍal	Cabinet
sambhaalnaa	To Manage
raajyapaal	Governor
mahaamahim	Her/His Excellency
uparaajypaal	Lieutant Governor
nideesak	Director
samsat	Parliament
vitta mantrii	Finance Minister / Secretary
samsadiiy saciv	Parliamentary Secretary
niyantrak	Controller

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *raaṣṭrapati* substitute *pradhaan mantrii* Prime Minister, *raajypaal* Governor *videeś manthrii* Foreign Minister.

In place of *bhaarat kee* substitute *ruus kee* Russian *amerikaa kee* American' srii *laṅkaa kee* ceylon.

M2 In place of *bhaarat kee* substitute *uttarapradeeś kee* UP. *aandhr pradeeś kee* A.P. *Karṇaaṭak kee* Karnataka and make necessary changes such as *mukhya mantri* Chief Minister in place of *raaṣṭrapati* President.

M3 In place of *bhaarat kee* substitute *briṭan kee* Britain *ruus kee Russian neepaal kee* nepal *siṅgapuur kee* singapore.

M4 In place of *upapradhaan mantrii* Deputy Prime Minister substitute *upadhyakṣ* vice president *upa-raajya paal* lieutant Governor *upanideesak* Deputy

Director *upaaayukt* Deputy commissioner & make necessary changes to make the sentences realistic.

LEARNER'S NOTE

Study the salient Features of Indian constitution and identify the position of President, Vice President, Prime Minister & Attorney General.

Also study and note the names of presidents & prime ministers of Developed Countries & neigbouring countries.

eek dam baḍhiyaa superb when some work is done very well and result brings utmost happiness this expression is used.

e.g. *vidyaarthiinee sundar phuuloṅkee*
gucchee ki tasviir khiiñcii usee
numaaiś mẽe pratham puraskaar
milaa too adhyaapak nee vidyaarthii
see kahaa "tumnee bahut acchii tasviir
khiiñcii eek dam baḍhiyaa hai

Student wrote a beautiful picture of bunch of Flowers. This got an award in the exhibition. Then the teacher told that student your picture is simply superb.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

bhaaratkee	*raaṣṭrapati*	*smt.*	*Paaṭiil*	*hai*
India's	Nation head	Smt.	Paatil	is

Smt. Paaṭiil is the President of India.

bhaarat kee	*uparaaṣṭrapati*	*srii*	*ansaarii*	*hai*
India's	Deputy Nation head	Mr.	Ansaari	is

Sree Ansaarii is the Vice-President of India.

bhaarat kee	*pradhaan*	*mantrii*	*manmohansiṅg*	*haĩ*
India's	Prime	Minister	ManMohansing	is

Mr. Manmohan sing is the Prime Minister of India.

Note that the Prefix in this cycle gives additional meaning to the basic word.

bhaarat kee	*upa*	*raastrapati*	*ansaarii*	*haĩ*
India's	vice	president	Ansaari	is

Sree Ansaari is the Vice President of India.

SUPPLEMENT

Use the following in your own sentences

vitta mantrii	Finance Minister
videeś mantrii	Foreign Minister
griha mantrii	Home Minister
mahanyaayaadi	Attorney General
mantrii	Secretary / Minister

Translate the following into English

śikṣaa mantraalay kee samsadiiy saciv
parlimentary secretary to the Ministry of Education

vitta mantrii kaa aapt sahaayak
personal assistant to the Finance Minister

viśeeṣ nirdeesak	Additional / Special Director
praanśupal	
pradhaanaacaarya	Principal
niyantrak	Controller
mukhy salaahkaar	Chief Advisor

—o—

CYCLE - 39

Topical Focus	:	Population literacy etc.,
Grammatical Focus	:	Prefixes giving the opposite / negative meaning
Interrogative	:	*kitnii fii sadii* What percentage
Rituals	:	*jahā̃a tak hoo sakee* As far as possible

MODEL SENTENCES

M1	*aaj meeree doost kaa aanaa aniścit hai*	-	To-day my friend's arrival is indefinite.
M2	*hamaaree deeś mẽe ab bhii bahut loog unpaḍh haĩ*	-	Even now too many people in our country are illiterates
M3	*buree loog gairkaanuunii kaam kartee haĩ*	-	Bad people do illegal work
M4	*ghamaṇḍii loog duusro--onkaa apamaan kartee haĩ*	-	Egoistic people insult others

M5	*aaj tumhaaraa doost kyõõ nahii aataa ?*	- Why is your friend not coming today ?
M6	*unpaḍh loog zyaadaa kis deeś mẽẽ hai ?*	- In which country plenty of illiterates live ?
M7	*gairkaanuunii kaam kaun-kartaa hai*	Who does illegal things?
M8	*ghamaṇḍii loog kyaa kartee hai ?*	- What do the egoistic people do ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1	A	*tumhaaraa doost kahã̃ã-hai ?*	Where is your friend ?
	B	*voo maisuur gayaa hai*	- He has gone to Mysore.
	A	*śaam tak aa jaaeegaa na ?*	- He will be back by evening is n't it ?
	B	*usee vahã̃ã bahut kaam-hai isliyee uskaa aaj aanaa aniścit hai*	He has a lot of work there, therefore his com--ing to-day is indefinite
C2	A	*anpaḍh kisee kahtee hai ?*	- Who is an illiterate ?
	B	*joo paḍhnaa likhnaa nahii jaantaa usee anpaḍh kahtee hai*	- One who does not know reading and writing is called an illiterate
	A	*anpaḍh loog kis deeś mẽẽ zyaadaa hai ?*	- In which country the illeterates are more ?
	B	*hamaaree deeś mẽẽ bhii anpaḍh loog bahut hai*	- In our country also illiterates are plenty.
C3	A	*maalik naukar kaa apamaan kyõõ kartaa hai ?*	- Why does the employer insult the servant ?

	B	*kyõõnki uskee paas paisaa hai*	- Because he has money.
	A	*too kyaa huaa ?*	- What if (he has money)
	B	*paisee see ghamaṇḍii bantaa hai aur*	- Man becomes proud of his money.
	A	*ghamaṇḍii loog duusroonkaa apamaan kartee hai*	- Egoistic people (always) insult others.
C4	A	*kaun gair kaanuunii kaam kartaa hai ?*	- Who does illegal works ?
	B	*buree loog kartee hai*	- Bad people do.

VOCABULARY

aniścit	Indefinite / undecided		
anpaḍh	Illiterate		
ghamaṇḍii	Proud / boastful		
gairkaanuunii	Illegal		
maalik	Owner		
naukar	Servant		
apamaan	Insult		
kaanuun	Law		
kaanuunii	Legal		
gairkaanuunii	Illegal		
anginat	Innumerable		
likhit	Written		
śakht	Strong		
kaaydaa	Rules	*śiksit*	. Educated
aśikśit	Unedcated	*Fikr*	Worry
aparaadhii	Criminal(s)		
paapkritya kartee hai	Perpetrate attrocities		
mahaadviip	continent		

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place of *anpaḍh* illiterate substitute *anginat* innumerable *andeekhee unseen añjaanee* unknown and make necessary changes in the sentence

E.g. *anginat loog hamaaree deeś mẽe gariib haĩ*
Innumerable people are poor in our country.

M2 In place of *hamaaree deeśmẽe* in our country substittue *afrikaa mahaadviip mẽe* In African continent and other backward countries.

M3 In place of *buree loog* bad people substitute *duṣṭ loog kruurii loog* cruel people. In place of *gairkaanuunii illegal* substitute *khoon* murder *paap sin taskarii* robbery *apaharṇ* kidnap.

M4 In place of *ghamaṇḍii loog* egoistic people substitute *amiir loog* rich people *adhikaarii loog* officers *buree loog* bad people.

In place of *apamaan kartee haĩ* substitute *niicaa dikhaatee haĩ* illiterate *parvaah nahiĩ kartee* dont care *kaṣṭ deetee haĩ* tease
(make necessary changes)

LEARNER'S NOTE

joo bhii hoo When a person is insisting upon another person to do a hard work the person doing the work is not sure of doing, this expression is used.

e.g.
A *tum mujhee kaltak hazaar rupyee laa doo*
B *bhaut muśkil hai meeree paas paisaa nahiĩ hai*
A *joo bhii hoo mujhee kal hii caahiyee*

B *jahãã tak hoosakee koośiś karũũgaa*
As far as possible, I will try.

OPPOSITE

maan	*apmaan*	Insult
izzat	*beeizzat*	Disrespect
haazirii	*gairhaazirii*	Absence
śakt	*aśakt*	Weak
kaaydaa	*beekaaydaa*	illegal
likhit	*alikhit*	Unwritten

Use the above mentioned words and phrases in meaningful sentences.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

aaj	*meeree*	*doost kaa*	*aanaa*	*aniścit*	*hai*
Today	my	friend	coming	indefinite	is

Today my friend's coming is indefinite.

hamaree	*deeś*	*mẽe*	*ab*	*bhii*	*bahut*	*loog*	*anpḍah*	*haĩ*
Our	country	in	now	also	many	people	illiterate	are

In our country still there are plenty of illiterates.

buree	*loog*	*gair kaanuunii*	*kaam*	*kartee*	*haĩ*
Bad	people	illegal	work	do	are

Bad people do illegal work.

ghamanḍii	*loog*	*duusroonkaa*	*apamaan*	*kartee*	*hai̐*
Proud	people	others	insult	do	are

Proud people insult others.

1. a is prefixed to anyword to bring the negative or opposite meaning.

e.g.	*niścit*	definite	*aniścit*	indefinite
	vyay	spend	*apvyay*	unspent
	gamy	passable	*agamy*	impassable

an is prefixed to a word to negate or contradict

2.	*deekhee*	seen	*andeekhee*	unseen
	sunee	heard	*ansunee*	unheard
	paḍhii	Read	*anpaḍhii*	unread (f)

3. prefix baa is used before a word to emphasize the meaning

e.g.	*izzat*	respect	*baa izzat*	with respect
	kaaydaa	rule	*baakaaydaa*	According to the rules

4. bee prefix is used to negate or constrast

fikr	worry	*beefikr*	worryless
izzat	honour	*beeizzat*	dishonour
dhaḍak	fearful	*beeḍhadak*	fearless
naam	name	*beenaamii*	anonymous

5. Some stray words to apa as prefixed to indicate improper quality.

svar	melody	*apasvar*	harsh
arjit	earned	*apaarjit*	unearned
		anaarjit	

SUPPLEMENT

Frame two sentences using each of the following prefixes in meaningful realistic sentences.

a

an

baa

bee

apa

Translate the following into Hindi

1. Uneducated people create problem in the society.
2. Musicians can sing without seeing
3. Who composed this unheard song ?
4. Criminals perpetrate attrocities.

———o———

CYCLE - 40

Topical Focus	:	Professionals / Residents
Grammatical Focus	:	*Vaalaa vaalii* Marked subject/ noun marker *vaalee*
Interrogative	:	*kahā̃ kaa rahnee vaalaa* which place resident
Rituals	:	*eek saath das ghaṇṭee* 10 hours at a stretch

MODEL SENTENCES

M1	*bambaii vaalee maraaṭhii booltee haĩ*	-	Bomayites speak Marathi.
M2	*gaaneevaalii mahiḷaaẽe beṅgḷuur vaalii haĩ*	-	Singing women are from Bangalore.
M3	*chootiivaalii laḍkii khuub naactii hai*	-	Small girl dances well
M4	*ṭhaṇḍaavaalaa paanii dussree gilaas mẽe ḍaaloo*	-	Pour Cold water in a different glass

M5 *teezvaalee ladḳe dhiimee-vaalee ladḳoonsee aagee badḥtee haĩ* - Smart boys will excel the slow (learning) boys.

M6 *bambaiivaalee kaunsii bhaasaa booltee haĩ ?* - What language do the Bombayites speak ?

M7 *gaaneevaalii mahilaaẽẽ kahã̃ kii haĩ ?* - Women who are singing are from where ?

M8 *kaun khuub naactii hai ?* - Who dances well

M9 *ṭhaṇḍaavaalaa paanii kismẽẽ ḍaalnaa hai ?* - Where should the cold water be poured in ?

M10 *kaun kissee aagee badḥtee haĩ ?* - Who excels whom ?

CONVERSATIONS

C1 A *vee loog kaun haĩ ?* - Who are they ?
B *vee mahaaraṣṭr kee haĩ* - They are from a Maharashtra.
A *vee kaunsii bhaasaa booltee haĩ* - What language do they speak ?
B *vee maraaṭhii bhaasaa booltee haĩ* - They speak Marathi language

C2 A *vee kyaa kar rahii hai ?* - What are they doing ?
B *vee gaa rahii haĩ* - They are singing
A *vee kahã̃ kii rahnee vaalii haĩ ?* - Where are they (living) from ?
B *vee beṅgluuru vaalii haĩ* - They are from Bangalore.

C3 A *caar ladḳiyã̃ vahã̃ kyaa kar rahii haĩ ?* - What are the four girls doing there ?
B *vee naac abhyaas kar rahii haĩ* - They are practising dance.

A *unmẽẽ see kaun acchaa-naactii hai ?* - Who among them dances well ?
B *unmẽẽ see chooṭiivaalii bahut acchaa naactii hai* - Among them the small one dances very well.

C4 A *badḍee gilaas mẽẽ kyaa hai* - What is in the big glass?
B *badḍee gilaas mẽẽ garam-paanii hai* - There is hot water in the big glass.
A *chooṭee vaalee mẽẽ ?* - In the small one glass ?
B *usmee ṭhaṇḍaa paanii hai* - There is cold water in it.
A *ṭhaṇḍaa paanii kismẽẽ ḍaalũũ ?* - Where should I pour the Cold Water ?
B *usee haree valee gilaas mẽẽ ḍaaloo* - Put it in the green glass.

C5 A *caar ladḳee abhii tak skuul mẽẽ kyaa kar rahee haĩ ?* - What are the four boys doing in the school till now ?
B *vee dhiimeevalee ladḳee haĩ dhiiree see siikhtee haĩ ?* - They are slow learning (backward) boys. They learn slowly.
A *baakii ladḳee ?* - Other boys ?
B *baakii ladḳee teezvaalee-haĩ vee jaldii siikh leetee haĩ* - Others are smart. They learn fast.
A *vee kaisee jaldii siikh-leetee haĩ ?* - How do they learn fast ?
B *vee teez haĩ aur eeksaath-chee ghanṭee padḥ likh leetee haĩ ?* - They are smart and they read and write six hours at a stretch.

VOCABULARY

eek saath	At a stretch
bambaiivalee	Bombayites
mahiḷaaẽẽ	Women
teez	Smart
dhiimee	Slow
aagee badḥnaa	To make progress
rahneevaalii	Residents F
baakii	Remaining
śahar vaale	City dwellers
raṅgiin	Colourful
dhoonaa	To wash (clothes)
mãjhnaa	To wash (vessels)

TEACHER'S NOTE

M1 In place *bambaiivaalee* substitute *naasik vaalee* people of Nasik *puunaavaalee* Residents of Poona.

In place of *Maraaṭhii* substitute other languages like *hindii* Hindi & change the state / place where it is spoken e.g.

aandhravaalee telugu booltee haĩ
Andhra people speak Telugu.
Keeraḷavaalee malayaaḷam booltee haĩ
Keralites speak Malayalam

M2 In place of *gaaneevaalii* singers (F) substitute *khaana pakaanee vaalii* cooking women (cooks) (F) *dauḍhee vaalii* runners F.

M3 In place of *chooṭiivaalii* small one substitute *gooriivaalii* white one *lambiivaalii* tall one *kaaliivaalii* black one

In place of *naactii* substitute *gaatii* sings, *padḥtii* reads *dhootii* washes.

M4 In place of *ṭhaṇḍaa vaalaa* cold substitute *raṅgiinvalaa* Colourful *zyaadaavaala* more - *kaamvaalaa* working.(person)M

M5 In place of *teezvaalee* substitute *śaharvaalee* city (boys) *akḷmand* intelligent. *mehnatii* hard working.

LEARNER'S NOTE

eek saath - At a stretch / continuously in one stroke / without break When a work is done which normally takes short time / which cant be done for more / long time, if done for longer time this expression is used.

e.g. *das saalkee baccee aadhee ghanṭee tak tair saktee haĩ*

10 year old kids can swim for half an hour

jaan naamak ladḳaa eek saath caar ghanṭee tak tairtaa rahaa
A boy by name john was swimming for four hours at a stretch

Use the following in your own meaningful sentences.

badaavaalaa	big	masculine sg.
chooṭiivaalii	small (f)	Feminine sg.pl.
lambeevaalee	Tall	masculine pl.
ruusvaalee	Russians	
ṭaapuuvaalee	Islanders	
Amerikaa vaalii	American (F)	
Misrvaalaa	Egyptian (M)	

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

bambaiivaalee	*maraathii*	*booltee*	*haĩ*
Bombayaites	Marathi	speak	are

Bombayites speak Marathi

gaaneevaalii	*mahilaaẽe*	*beṅgluurvaalii*	*haĩ*
singers	women	Bangaloreans	are

Women singers are from Bangalore.

chooṭiivaalii	*laḍkii*	*khuub*	*naactii*	*hai*
small	girl	well	dances	is

The small girl dances well.

ṭhanḍaavaalaa	*paanii*	*duusree*	*gilaas*	*mẽe*	*ḍaaloo*
cold	water	second	glass	in	pour/put

Pour cold water in a different glass.

teezvaalee	*laḍkee*	*dhiimeevaalee*	*laḍkoonsee*	*aagee*	*baḍhtee*	*haĩ*
smart	boys	slow	boys than	Front	fast	are

Smart boys excel the slow in learning boys.

SUPPLEMENT

By adding *vaalaa / vaalee / vaalii* to Adverb adjective noun and verb we can form nouns & adjectives

verbs	*paḍhneevaalee*	Readers
	karneevaalee	Doers

	likhneevaalaa	Writer
Adjective	*lambaavaalaa*	Tall (M)
	mooṭiivaalii	Fat (F)
	garam vaalaa	Hot
Noun	*maisuurvaalaa*	Mysorean
	ruusiivaalaa	Russian
	miṣravaalaa	Egyptian
Adverb	*zoorvaalaa*	Loud (M)
	dhiireevaalii	Slow (F)
	jaldiivaalee	Fast (M.pl.)

———o———

UNIT

5

Review Conversation / Self discovery unit

(CYCLE 41 to 50)

CYCLE - 41

A. *aõookaa saḍak kahãã hai ?*
B. *aur aagee jaanaa hoogaa.*

A. *yahãã see kitnii duur hai ?*
B *kariib doo miil hoogaa*

A. *yahããsee kaisee jaanaa hai ? zaraa meharbaanii karkee bataaeengee ?*
B *isii saḍakpar eek miil jaaneepar eek pul mileegaa*

A *kaunsaa pul ? heestings pul ?*
B *nahii nahii mahaalakṣmipul*

A *pul paar karnaa hai ?*
B *hãã, pul paar karkee bããii oor muḍkar thooḍii duur jaaneepar eek sarkal mileegaa vahii see aõookaa saḍak kaa praṛambh hootaa hai*

———o———

CYCLE - 42

A. *maisuur jaaneevaalii bas kab aayeegii ?*
B *ab tak aajaanaa caahiyee thaa. aaj na jaanee itnii deer kyõo ?*

A *voo bas kahã̃ see aanee vaalii hai ?*
B *voo sāayad haidaraabaad see aayeegii*

A *haidaraabaad see kitnee bajee chuuṭṭii hai ?*
B *kal raat das bajee vahã̃see niklii hai. agar kal raat ṭhiik das bajee niklee too suba yahã̃ nau bajee aa jaatii hai*

———o———

CYCLE - 43

A. *suusannee raatkoo kyõõ rooṭii nahiĩ khaayii thii ?*
B *usee bahut peeṭ dard thaa isliyee rooṭii nahiĩ khaayii thii ?*

A *kyõõ voo daakṭar kee paas nahiĩ gayii ?*
B *gayii thii unhoonee davaa bhii dii. phir bhii dard kam nahiĩ huaa*

A *vee kyaa boolee ?*
B *aapareeẽan karnaa hoogaa*

A *beecaarii kii pariikṣaa nazdiik hai na ?*
B *kyaa karẽe ! tabiiyat kaa bhii khyaal rakhnaa hai*

———o———

CYCLE - 44

A. *aaiiee aaiiee, aapkoo kyaa caahiyee ?*
B. *mujhee bhaajii caahiyee*

A *liijiee, bhaajii sab taazii hai*
A *bhiṇḍii kaa kyaa daam hai ?*
B *bhiṇḍii kiloo biis rupyee hai*

A *aaluu kaisee deetee hoo ?*
B *aaluu bahut sastaa hai. kiloo sirf das rupyee hai*

A *nahiĩ nahiĩ, das rupyee nahiĩ, aaj chee rupyee mẽe miltaa hai*
B *voo maal puraanaa hai;*
A *acchaa eek kiloo bhiṇḍii doo kiloo aaluu diijiyee*

———o———

CYCLE - 45

A. *namastee aaiee kamalaaji kab aayii ?*
B *mai abhii aa rahii hũu. mai maisuur deekhnaa caahtii hũu. dikhaayeengii ?*

A *zaruur. aaj hii khaanee kee baad jaayeengee*
B *maisuur bahut sundar hai na ?*

A *haã haã, ya daksin bhaarat kaa sundarnagar hai*
B *yahã deekhnee laayak kyaa kyaa hai ?*

A *yahã eek badaa udyaan hai. uskaa naam vrindaavan hai. vahã bahut tarah kee phuul hai. rangbirangee fauvvaaree hai*
B *yahã aur kyaa kyaa hai ?*

A *caamundii pahaad hai. us pahaad par eek badaa mandir hai*
B *yahã baazaar mẽe viseeṣ kyaa hai ?*

A *yahã baazaar mẽe sandal see banee saamaan aur reesmii saadiyã bahut mashuur hai*

———o———

CYCLE - 46

Topical Focus : Meeting local officers.

Grammatical Focus : Reported speech quotative type.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

raaju nee	*kahaa*	*ki*	*"maĩ*	*kal*	*aaũgaa*
Raju	said	that	I	tomorrow	will come

Raju said that "I will come tomorrow."

aapnee	*puuchaa*	*ki*	*kiraayaa*	*kitnaa*	*hai ?*
you	asked	that	rent	how much	is

Did you ask "how much is the rent ?

In a compound sentence normally subordiante clause comes first and then the principal clause follows. In reportive talk it will be reverse.

Continuing narraiton

1. *is śahar mẽe nañjappa naamak mahaapurus thee*
2. *unhoonee sab naagarikoon see puuchaa "aap kii kooii samasyaa hai" ?*
3. *vee bahut acchee aadmii thee*
4. *unhoonee nagarkii tarakkii kee liyee bahut koośiś kii*
5. *sab loog unkii izzat kartee thee.*

Frame as many sentences as you can by using *ki* (compound sentences)

Match the following connecting them with ki

1. *vee śaayad kal aaeengee eek ḍaaktar hai ?*
2. *mãi sinemaa deekhũgaa aapsee kisnee kahaa ?*
3. *aap samudr mẽe tairtee gayee hoongee mujhee thooḍaa ḍar lagaa*
4. *aap sab loogoonkoo maastar nee kahaa acchii tarah hindii siikhnii caahiyee*

Answer the matching drill

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

———o———

CYCLE - 47

Topical Focus : Festival & rituals

Grammatical Focus : Reflexive actions.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

mãi	*apnee*	*aap*	*kitaab*	*paḍhtaa*	*hũu*
I	my	you	book	read	am

I read the book for myself.

This can also be written as

mãi	*apnee*	*aap*	*kitaab*	*paḍh leetaa*	*hũu*
I	my	you	book	read take	am

I myself read the book.

paḍh leena is a compound verb which gives the reflexive meaning. Some reflexive verbs can be formed as follows :-

verb	Reflexive form
kar	*kar ḍaal*
bool	*bool uṭh*
kah	*kah ḍaal*
sun	*sun lee*
jaag	*jaag jaa*
apnee aap	after the subject is necessary

Some additional examples

1. *aap jaaiee maĩ khud paḍh leetaa hũ̃ũ*
2. *kal kee liyee paaṭh likh leenaa caahiyee*
3. *aaj tyoohaar hai saaraa kaam mujhiikoo kar leenaa caahiyee*
4. *ṭhiik hai kaṅghii kar lũ̃ugaa*
5. *pahlee kapḍee dhoo ḍaalũ̃ugaa*

CONVERSATIONS

C1 A *andar aaiee na ? baiṭh jaaiee abhii abhii khaanaa ban jaaeegaa*

B *khaanaa khaaneekaa vakt hoo gayaa ?*

A *abhii hoo jaaeegaa. aap haath muh dhoo ḍaaliyee*

B *ṭhiik hai, idhar hii baiṭh jaataa hũ̃ũ*

A *khaanaa khaakar jaaieegaa*

C2 A *jaldii karoo, mandir jaanaa hai*

B *aap nahaa cukii na ?*

A *hoogayaa, kapḍaa pahan lũ̃ugii*

B *ṭhiik hai, jaldii pahuñc jaaiee*

A *naukar kyaa kar rahaa hai ?*

B *voo khaanaa khaa rahaa hai*

A *aapkee aatee tak maĩ kyaa kartaa rahũ̃ũ ?*

B *tab tak gharkii safaaii kartee rahoo*

In all these sentences verb will have an intensifier or (reflex action indicator)

TASKS

Frame two sentences by using each of the following reflex action verb forms

1. *Paḍh ḍaal*
2. *likh loo*
3. *sudhaar loo*
4. *paal loo*
5. *haar jaa*

RESPONSE DRILL

Answer the following questions

1. *aap kal kahã̃ã soo gayee ?*
2. *aaj sabhaa kee liyee kaunsaa kapḍaa pahan leeṅgee?*
3. *baagh koo deekhnee see ḍar jaaeeṅgee na ?*
4. *apnee ghar mẽ̃e aap hii khaanaa banaatee haĩ ?*

———o———

CYCLE - 48

Topical Focus : Places of Interest

Grammatical Focus : Reportive construction *kahaa jaataa hai, lagtaa hai*

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

kahaa	*jaataa*	*hai*	*ki*	*kal*	*vee*	*aaeeṅge*
said	go	is	that	Tomorrow	They	will come

It is said that he/they will come tomorrow.

unsee	*kahiee*	*ki*	*vee*	*kal aavẽe*
Them with	say please	that	they	tomorrow let come

Pleasee (you) tell them that let them come tomorrow

1. *kahaa jaataa hai ki śahjahaãnee taajmahal banvaayaa*

   sunaa jaataa hai ki unkoo apnii biibii see bahut pyaar thaa maanaa jaataa hai ki uskee marnee

par uskii
yaaddāst mẽe isee banvaayaa

GUIDED CONVERSATIONS

aap kee doost aaj kahã̃ gayee ?

vee hampii kee liyee gayee

vahã̃ kitnee din raheeṅgee ?

caar din raheeṅgee

utnee din vahã̃ kyaa kartee raheeṅgee ?

eek din hampii deekhtee hai

dusree din tungabhadra bã̃dh deekheeṅgee

baad koo kyaa karneevaalee hai ?

lagtaa hai vahã̃ see baḷḷaarii aaneevaalee hai

phir vaapas aaeeṅgee

TASKS

kahaa jaataa hai ya śahar unkii raajadhaani rahii

kahaa jaataa hai ki yahã̃ eek baḍaa kilaa thaa

maanaa jaataa hai ki voo yahã̃

pandrahvii sadii mẽe raaj kartaa thaa

Frame five sentences in which you ask your friend to convey some message to someone so that he may do a favour for you. Use the particles *kahaa jaataa hai, lagtaa hai, maanaa jaataa hai, andaaz lagaayaa jaataa hai*

—o—

CYCLE - 49

Topical Focus : National Festival

Grammatical Focus : More usuages of productive verbs / compound verbs.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

hamnee	*tooraṇ*	*bã̃dh*	*ḍaalaa*
we	buntings	tied	put

We completed fixing buntings.

bahutsee	*loog*	*mar*	*miṭee*
many	people	die	destroyed

Plenty of people laid down their lives.

khaa	Eat	*khaa ḍaal*	Eat away
		khaa dee	Eat up
jaan	know	*jaan lee*	understand (better)

maar	Hit	*maar ḍaal*	kill
khoo	lose	*khoo ḍee*	lose
		khoo jaa	make to lose
		khoo ḍaal	

FORMATION DRILL

jaanee doo	let go
aanee doo	let come
bhaag jaa	Run away
dee doo	give away
hoo jaanee doo	Let it complete / happen
ṭhaṇḍaa hoo	Get cold
murjhaa jaa	Fade out
gir jaa	Fall down
kaaṭ ḍaal	cut off

Frame a series of instructions in your job related work using compound / productive verbs.

Comprehension Practice

eek gãav mẽe eek buuḍhii thii
voo miṭhaaii banaakar beecaa kartii thii
eek din usnee bahut sii miṭhaaii banaa ḍaalii
eek kauveenee eek din usee deekh liyaa
miṭhaaii leekar peeḍ par caḍhaa
eek giidaḍ aayaa
giidaḍ nee kahaa tum bahut acchaa gaatii hoo
eek gaanaa gaa ḍaaloo na ?
kauvee nee gaanee kee liyee mũh khoolaa
miṭhaaii gir gayii. giidaḍ usee uṭhaakar khaa gayaa

Frame questions to elicit the answers in the story.

———o———

CYCLE - 50

Topical Focus : Progress in studies & job.

Grammatical Focus : Contrastive type of construction. Subjunctive type. may or may not.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

aap	*jaisee*	*loog*	*hii*	*aisaa*	*kah dee*	too
you	like	people	alone	so	say give	then

ham	*jaisee*	*loog*	*kyaa*	*kahee*
we	like	people	what	say

If people like you say so, then what can people like us say ?

voo	*imtahaan*	*mẽe*	*uttiirṇ*	*hoo*	*bhii*	*saktaa*
He	Exmn.	in	pass	is	also	can

hai	*yaa*	*na bhii*	*hoo*	*saktaa*
is	or	no also	is	can

He may pass in the examination or may not pass.

When we contrast one with the other to denote how different the two persons are things are expressions of this kind are used.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES

acchii tarah paḍhnee vaalee hii agar uttiirṇ na hoṅgee too na paḍhnee vaalee kaisee uttiirṇ hoṅgee (na paḍhnee vaaloṅkaa kyaa kahnaa)

das baar kahnee par bhii agar aap nahiī samjhee too aap hindii kaisee siikh sakeṅgee

Continuing narration

aapkoo naukarii milii ?
nahiī
jab aapkoo hii nahiī milii too hamkoo kaisee mileegii

Frame Similar Structures in five different sentences.

———o———

APPENDIX NO I

Content Analysis

Cycle No.	Topical Focus	Grammatical Focus	Ritual
1	Greetings Introduction Name, Profession, Nationality	Pronouns I II III Persons nominative Possessive cases Honorific Sg & plural	Namastee Hello *jii haa* Yes sir, Madam No Sir, Madam
2.	Possession & Greetings	All forms of possessive Pronouns	*aap kaisee haĩ?* How do you do?
3.	House hold things	Marked and unmarked Adjectives	*acchaa* ,well, nice
4.	Conversation about a friend's residence	Present tense verb 'rah' to be /live in all persons	*bahut acchaa* very good
5.	Daily Routine	Finite verb in Present tense	*Kabhii kabhii* Occasionally
6.	Past Residence & Actions	Verb to be in Past tense	*beecaaraa*

		with all pronouns or a few nouns	*beecaaree* *beecaarii* poor thing
7.	Continuous actions	Present & past Continuous tense	*doo-tiin* 2-3 *aaṭh-das,* 8-10
8.	Past movement	Past forms of Intransitive verbs & use of *jab-tab* When-then	*chattiis kaa farak* Logger heads
9.	Voluntary actions	*Nee* forms of simple Past tense	*too kyaa huaa?* What if?
10.	Remembering & recollecting the past	Remaining four forms of *nee* Transitive verbs	*ummiid hai ki* Hope that
11.	Routine actions	Habitual tense	*kuch bhii hoo* Let any thing happen
12.	Future actions	Future tense	*jaldii kijiyee na*

			Please hurry up
13.	Dependent actions	Adverbial clause of condition	Instrumental case *see*-with, from, by through, on account of
14.	Common dialogue with compound & complex sentences	Relative pronoun *Joo*-that which He who, with conjuctive	*samjhee ?* Did you understand?
15.	Double & simultaneous actions	Repetitive verbs & simultaneous actions	*kar diijiee* do it up finish
16.	Reminding duties	Reflexive Pronouns *apnaa*(self)	*apnaa kooii hai* Any one called ours
17.	Commands	Infinitive or imperative moods	*kaunsii baḍii baat hai?* What a big deal?

18.	Narration of actions or events	Compound sentences with conjunctive ki	*ab samjhaa* Now I understand *eekaadh* a few
19.	Reasoning for actions	Adverbial clause of reason with the use of *kyõki & cũuki* Because	*kyaa vajah hai?* What is the reason?
20.	Approximate Quantity or indefinite quantity	Use of *kooii, kuch* Any a few	*jahãã caah hai vahãã raah hai* Where there is a will , there is a way
21.	Completed actions	Intensifier productive verbs *jaa, paḍ uṭh ḍal baiṭh*	*kiyee binaa* without doing
22.	Weather conditions & seasons	Duration & seasonal activities	*eek dambaḍhiyaa* superb
23.	Booking a room in a hotel	*na.....na* Neither nor	*ummiid hai ki* It is hoped that
24.	Weather & seasons	use of *paḍ* happen/occur command/ mandate	*jiskii laaṭhii uskii bhãis* Survival of the fittest
25.	Activities in Nature & human reactions	Adverbial/clause/phrase of time/simultaneous action in different tenses	*ṭhiik nahiĩ* Not proper Incorrect
26.	Commands/orders instructions	Causitive forms of verbs *karnaa* doing *karaanaa* getting done *karvaanaa* cause to get done	*aree baap ree,* oh my goodness !
27.	Dialogue about needs	Plural forms of marked & unmarked nouns with	*naac na jaanee ãõgan ṭeḍhaa*

		case endings& without case endings	putting the blame on others to cover the weakness.
28.	Continuous multi actions	Productive & incomplete form of *kar do* in all tenses	*kyaa seevaa karũũ* May I help You.
29.	Common social work & corresponding result	adverbial phrase of reason & gernund	*joo bhii hoo* Come what may
30.	Nos. Groups Probabality	*aaṭh-das*-8-10 *biisõõ* scores *s̄aayad* perhaps *kariib kitnee dinõõ mẽẽ* In about how many days	*joo aapkii marzii* As you please
31.	Frequent needy actions	Active passive & impersonal voices	*maanee yaa na maanee* Whether (you) agree or not
32.	Instructions commands Discipline orders	.....*nee parbhii* Inspite of / even though	*baal baal bac gayaa* very narrowly escaped
33.	Continuous actions and common conversations	past participle used as adjective, adverb & noun Phrase	*samjhee binaaa* without under-standing
34.	Some geographical Items	Degrees of camparison *see* than *sab see* than all *see baḍkar*.... Than	*aisii kyaa musiibat aa gayii?* What is the (grave) problem ?
35.	Following elders,words obeying orders	Compound sentences using *jaisee*..... As *vaisee*.....so	*jaisii karnii vaisii bharnii* As you sow, so you reap
36.	Emotions & related actions.	productive/auxilary verbs *kar do lag* begin	*muusldhaar varṣaa*

		paḍ happen	Heavy rain
37.	Affix & suffix to give additional or opposite meanings	Modified meanings	*eekdam baḍhiyaa* superb
38.	Population, literacy	Prefixes giving negative meaning	*jahaã tak hoo sakee* As far as Possible
39.	Professions Residents	*Vaalaa vaalee vaalii* suffix	*eek saath das ghaṇṭee* 10 hrs at a stretch
	41-44 42-45 43		
46.	Meeting local Officers	Reported speech	
47.	Festivals & Rituals	Reflexive Actions	
48.	Places of interest	Reportive constructions like *kahaa jaataa hai ki* it is said that	
49.	National Festivals	More usages of Productive verbs & compound verbs	
50.	Progress in studies and job	Contrastive type fo sentences subjunctive type may or may not form	

APPENDIX NO IV

Hindi to English some classified common Vocabulary in alphabetical order with gender for nouns

अंग्रेज़		English man
अंग्रेज़ी	F	English
अंतर	M	Difference
अंतर्देशीय		Inland
अंदर		Inside
अंधेरा	M	Darkness
अकेला		Alone
अक्सर		Often
अगर		If
अगला		Next
अगस्त		August
अच्छा		Good
अधिक		More
अधिकार		Authority
अध्यक्ष		Head, Chairman
अफसोस	M	Sorrow
अबीर	M	Red powder
अरे		Oh!
असर	M	Influence
असुविधा	F	Inconvenience
अस्पताल	M	Hospital
आज्ञा	F	Permission
आनंद	M	Joy
आम		General/Mango
आवश्यक		Necessary
आसपास	M	Vicinity
आसानी		Easy
आसमान	M	Sky
इंतज़ाम	M	Arrangement
इंतज़ार	M	Waiting
इकट्ठा		Gather
इच्छा	F	Desire
इतिहास	M	History
इरादा	M	Intention
ईंट	F	Brick
उचित		Proper
ऋतु	F	Season
कठिन		Difficult
कभी नहीं		Never
कला	F	Art
कष्ट	M	Trouble
कारण	M	Reason
किनारा	M	Edge, Bank
कुमारी		Miss
कुल		In all
कृपया		Kindly
के अलावा		Besides
केवल		Only
कोठी	F	House
कोशिश	F	Attempt
कोहरा	F	Fog
खबर	F	News
खाली		Empty
खास		Special
खिड़की	F	Window
खुशी	F	Pleasure

ख्याल	M	Idea	दौरा	M	Tour
गणित	M	Mathematics	धन्यवाद	M	Thanks
गारा	M	Mortar	नमूना	M	Model , e.g.
गुलाल	M	Pink Powder	निजी		Private
चुनाव	M	Election	नींव	F	Foundation
चुकना		To miss	पडोस	M	Neighbourhood
चूना	M	Lime	पता	M	Address
चोट	F	Injury	हवाई पत्र	M	Air letter
छत	F	Roof	पहर	F	Part of the day
छुट्टी	F	Vacation	पिचकारी	F	Syringe
जगह	F	Place	पौना	F	3 quarters Less
ज़रा		A little	पाँव		one Quarter
जलना		To burn	प्रतीक्षा	F	Waiting
जाडा	M	Winter	बरबाद करना		To waste
जानकारी	F	Knowledge	बरसना		To rain
ज़िक्र	M	Mention	बराबर		continuesly/Equal
जुकाम	F	Cold	बर्फ	F	Snow, Ice
टकराना		To run into/dash	बीमार		Sick
ठंड	F	Cold season	बुखार	M	Fever
ठहरना		To stop/wait	बेकार		Unemployed
तथा		And	बैंगनी		Purple
तबादला	M	Transfer	भाषण	M	Speech
तबीयत	F	Health	भूगोल	M	Geography
तूफान	M	Storm	मित्र	M	Friend
तैयारी	F	Preparation	मील	F	Mile
त्योहार	M	Festival	मुसीबत	F	Trouble
दफ्तर	M	Office	मुहल्ला	M	Locality
दैनिक	M	Daily	मेला	M	Fair

मेहरबानी	F	Kindness	शब्दकोश		Dictionary
यदि		If	सचमुच		Really
योग्य		Competent	सडक	F	Street
राजनीति	F	Politics	सप्ताह	M	Week
रुमाल	M	Hand Kerchief	सफेद		White
लिफाफा	M	Envelope	सलाह	F	Advice/
लोहा	M	Iron			suggestion
वजह	F	Reason	सावधानी	F	Caution
वरन		But	साहित्य	M	Literature
वर्षगांठ	F	Birthday	स्थान	M	Place
वास्तव	M	In Reality	स्वयं		Self
विभाग	M	Department	हाल	M	Condition
शताब्दी	F	Century	हालचाल	F	Welfare/
					Condition

English Hindi Vocabulary in alphabetical order with gender indicator for nouns.(Contd.)

Accident		दुर्घटना	Connected with		वाला
Accompany		साथ देना	Cost		लगना
Admission	F	भर्ती	Dictionary	M	शब्दकोश
Although		हालांकि	Each		हर एक
Ancient		पुराना	Election	M	चुनाव
Aware		पता होना	Embrace		गले मिलना
Auspicious		शुभ	Enemity	F	दुश्मनी
By		के द्वारा	Enroll		नाम लिखाना
Celebrate		मनाना	Example	M	नमूना
Century	F	शताब्दी	Faith	M	विश्वास
Cloud	M	बादल	Fast		तेज़ी से
Concerning		के बारे में	Filled		भरपूर

Gathered		इकट्ठा किया	Recognize		पहचानना
Grade	M	दर्जा	Ring		बजना
Gray		भूरा	Same		एक ही
Hello		नमस्ते	Save		बचाना
Hope	F	आशा/उम्मीद	Seem		लगना
However		फिर भी	Side	F	तरफ
Hurry		जल्दी करना	Skillful		चतुर
Indigeneous	F	देशीय	Social		सामाजिक
Injury	F	चोट	Speaker	M	वक्ता
Interest	F	दिलचस्पी	Subject	M	विषय
Language	F	भाषा	Sunshine	F	धूप
Library	M	पुस्तकालय	Syringe	F	पिचकारी
Locality	M	मुहल्ला	Than		से
Meaning	M	मतलब	Therefore		इसलिए
Mother Tongue	F	मातृभाषा	To		तक
Movie	M	सिनेमा	Too		भी
Noon	F	दोपहर	Tour	M	दौरा
Nowadays		आजकल	Trip	F	यात्रा
Nowhere		कहीं नहीं	Undershirt	F	बनियन
(Take)offense		बुरा मानना	Universal		विश्व
Otherwise		नहीं तो	University	M	विश्वविद्यालय
Play		बजाना	Usually		आमतौर पर
Pleasure	M	आनंद	Washer woman		धोबिन
Publish		प्रकट करना	Waste		बरबाद करना
Queen		रानी	Whole		सारा
Quite		काफी	With		के पास, के साथ,
Reach		पहुँचना			से
Reality	M	वास्तव	Wind	F	हवा
Recently		हाल में	Wood	F	लकडी

GENERAL GLOSSARY

CLASSIFIED

BODY PARTS

sir	Head	*badan*	Body
baal	Hair	*khuun*	Blood
ma~ag	Parting head	*nabz*	vein
veen̤ii	Plaited hair	*room*	Body hair
bhaal	Forehead	*tud̤d̤i*	chin
a~akh	Eye	*laas̃*	corpse
bhaũ	Eye brow	*dimaag*	Mind
kaan	Ear	*cehraa*	Face
gaal	Cheek	*ja~agh*	Thigh
naak	nose	*kandhaa*	Shoulder
õõ t̤h	lip	*ãgut̤haa*	Thumb
da~at	Tooth/teeth	*carbii*	Fat
galaa	Throat	*gurdaa*	Kidney
mũunch	Mustache	*Pheephd̤ee*	Lungs
daad̤hii	Beard	*naad̤ii*	Pulse
kandhaa	Arm	*paslii*	Rib
haath	Hand	*a~asũu*	Tears
ũuglii	Finger	*jiibh*	Tongue
naakhuun	Nail	*peesãab*	urine
stan	Breast	*m~uh*	Mouth
chaatii	chest	*gardan*	Neck
peet̤	Belly		
naabhii	Navel	*pasiinaa*	Sweat
piit̤h	Back	*gañjaa*	Bald
eed̤ii	Heel	*andhaa*	Blind
camd̤aa	Skin	*bahraa*	Deaf
hadd̤ii	Bone	*gũugaa*	Dumb

Human Beings

aadmii	Man	*naujavaan*(m)	youth
aurat	Woman	*yuvatii (f)*	youth
bacaa	Child	*bahraa (m)*	Deaf
maadaa	Female	*langḍaa*	Lame
nar	Male	*paagal*	Mad man
buuḍhaa	Old man	*paglii*	Mad woman
buuḍhii	Old woman	*coor*	Thief
garbhiinii	Pregnant	*dalaal*	Broker
zaccaa	Wet woman	*vyaapaarii*	Merchant
muurkh	Stupid	*Kasaaii*	Butcher
samajhdaar	Intelligent	*bajaaj*	Cloth Merchant
beevkuuf	Dull / fool	*moocii*	Cobbler
naukar	Servant	*ṭheekeedaar*	Contractor
maalik	Master	*rasooiyaa*	Cook
kumhaar	Potter	*sampaadak*	Editor
dhoobii	Washerman	*maallii*	Gardener
kisaan	Farmer	*pansaarii*	Grocer
baḍhaii	Carpenter	*mazduur*	Laboures
sunaar	Goldsmith	*jaaduugaar*	Magician
machuaa	Fisherman	*luhaar*	Iron smith
naaii	Barber	*mãdaarii*	Juggler
adhyaapak	Teacher	*darjii*	Tailor
vakiil	Lawyer	*julaahaa*	Weaver
adhikaarii	Officer	*baid*	Doctor
baabuu	Clerk	*vigyaanii*	Scientist
šaaḍii	Marriage	*jyootiṣii*	Astrologer
dulhaa	Groom	*šilp*	Sculpture
dulhan	Bride		

Kinship Terms

Parivar	Family	*saas*	Mother in law
daadaa	Grand Father Father's Father	*sasuraal*	Father-in-law's house
daadii	Grand Mother Father's Mother	*buaa/ phuuphii*	Father's sister
naanaa	Grand Father Mother's Father	*phuuphaa*	Father's sister's husband
naanii	Gand Mother Mother's Mother	*pootaa*	Grandson
		pootii	Grand daughter
pitaajii/baap	Father	*mehmaan*	Guest
maataajii/maã	Mother	*deevar*	Husband's younger brother
beeṭaa	Son	*deevraanii*	Husband's younger brother's wife
beeṭii	Daughter		
baccee/ baciyaã	Children	*nanad*	Husband's sister
baḍaa bhaaii	Elder brother	*nandooii*	Husband's sister's husband
chooṭii bhaaii	Younger F brother	*rišteedaar*	Relatives
chooṭii behan	Younger sister	*maamaa*	Mother's brother
pati/šauhar	Husband	*maamii*	Mother's brother's wife
patnii/biibii	Wife	*mausii*	Mother's sister
caacaa	Father's younger brother	*behanooii*	Sister's husband
caacii	Father's younger brother's wife	*bhãtiijaa*	Sister's son
		bhãtiijii	Sister's daughter/ niece
taauu	Father's elder brother	*sauteelii maã*	Step mother
taaii	Father's elder brother's wife	*bahuu*	Daughter-in-law
sasur	Father in law	*saalaa*	Wife's brother
		saalii	Wife's sister

Dress & Ornaments

kapḍee	Clothes/Dress	*kacchaa*	Diaper
saaḍii	Saree	*pooṣaak*	Dress
coolii	Blouse	*jauharii*	Jeweller
dhootii	Dhootii	*jawaaharaat*	Jewellery
baniyan	Vests	*rumaal*	Kerchief
kurtaa	Jubba/shirt	*kaṇṭhhaar*	Necklace
šaal	Upper Garment shawl	*gaagraa*	Petticoat
		jeeb F	Pocket
suuii	Needle	*paajaamaa*	Pyjama
dhaagaa	Thread	*attar*	Scent
gahnee	Jewels	*kamiiz*	Shirt
karṇakuṇḍal	Ear ring	*reešam*	Silk
nath	Nose ring	*aastiin*	Sleeve
anguuṭhii	Ring	*juutee*	Shoes
maṅgalsuutr	Black beeds with gold pendant	*moozee*	Socks
		paaḍaa	Waist string
cappal	Sandals	*tauliyaa*	Towel
chaataa	Umbrella	*Pagḍii*	Turban
ṭoopii	Cap	*uunii*	Wollen
casmaa	Spectacles	*istrii*	Iron/Press
cuudii	Bangle	*dhoo*	Wash
peeṭii	Belt	*sii*	Stitch
suutii	Cotton	*darjii*	Tailor
		bun	Weave

Fruits & Vegetables

keelaa	Banana	*phuul -*	Cauli Flower
seeb	Apple	*goobhii*	Cabbage
ṣariibaa	Custard Apple	*khiiraa*	Cucumber
khajuur	Date	*lahusan*	Garlic
añjiir	Fig	*laukii/ghiaa*	Gourd
santraa	Orange	*nimbuu*	Lemon
daaḍim	Pomegranate	*biij*	Seed
aam	Mango	*kaccaa (phal)*	unriped buit
aṅguur	Grape	*Chilkaa*	Peel/Covering
amruud	Guava	*bhiṇḍii*	Okra
ras	Juice	*saag*	Leafy Vegetables
aamkii guṭhlii	Mango Stone	*pudiinaa*	Mint
		pyaaz	Onion
kharbuujaa	Melon	*maṭar*	Peas
papiitaa	Papayya	*aaluu*	Potato
naašpaatii	Pear	*kadduu*	Pumpkin
anaanaas	Pineapple	*muulii*	Raddish
naariyal	Coconut	*paalak*	Spinach
baiṅgan	Egg Plant	*ṭamaaṭar*	Tomato
cukndar	Beetroot	*parval*	Snake gourd
kareelaa	Bittergourd	*ṭiṇḍaa*	Tiny gourd
bandgoobhii	Cabbage	*taraazuu*	Balance
gaajar	Carrot	*daam*	Price
		acaar	Pickle

Trees Plants & Flowers

Peeḍ	Tree	*lataa*	Creeper
paudhaa	Plant	*kalii*	Bud
jad	Root	*Pattaa*	Leaf
šaakhaa	Branch	*bargad*	Banyan

deevadaar	Ceder	*sugaṅdh*	Fragrance
rabaḍ	Rubber	*paraag*	Pollen
aṅkur	Sprout	*kaṭhhal*	Jack tree/fruit
kalam	Graft	*draakṣ*	Grapes
kõõplee	New leaves	*kaajuu*	Cashew nuts
taaḍ	Palmairah	*ilaaicii*	Cardamom
kaãṭaa	Thorn	*lavaṅg*	Clove
phuul	Flower	*gannaa*	Sugarcane
gulaab	Rose	*niim*	Neam
kamal	Lotus		

MISCELLANEOUS

gaãv	Village	*giit*	Lyric
śahar	City	*gaanaa*	Song
saḍak	Street	*syaahii*	Ink
path	Path	*bas*	Bus
duukaan	Shop	*saaikal*	Cycle
baazaar	Shandy	*kacaharii*	Office
saamaan	Things	*mandir*	Temple
śaalaa	School	*dharm*	Religion
kaaleej	College	*bhagavan*	God
kaagaz	Paper	*puujaa*	Worship
akhbaar	News paper	*rath*	Temple car
kitaab	Book	*aaratii*	Waving holy flame
kahaanii	Story	*saṅgiit*	Music
naaṭak	Drama	*baajaa*	Instrument
kaavy/ kavitaa	Epic / Poetry	*viinaa*	viinaa
		murlii	Flute
leekh	Essay	*tablaa*	Drum

M Phrases Statements & Questions in Devanagari Script

Cycle No -1

1. नमस्ते
नमस्ते
मेरा नाम जान है।
मैं विद्यार्थी हूँ।
मैं अमेरिकन हूँ।
आपका नाम क्या है ?
आप कौन हैं?
क्या आप विद्यार्थी हैं ?
क्या आप अमेरिकन हैं ?
आपका नाम क्या है ?

Cycle No -2

यह मेरी किताब है।
वह आपका छाता है।
वह मेरी बहन है।
वे मेरे अध्यापक हैं।
उनका नाम राम है।
यह किसकी किताब है ?
वह किसका छाता है ?
वह कौन है?
उनका नाम क्या है ?

Cycle No -3

यह मेरा घर है।
वह आपकी कलम है।
यह हमारा कमरा है।
जान मोहन का दोस्त है।

यह किसका घर है ?
वह किसकी कलम है ?
यह किसका घर है ?
यह किसका कमरा है ?
मोहन का दोस्त कौन है?

Cycle No -4

मेरा कुरता सफेद है।
सरोजा सुंदर लडकी है।
कन्नड किताब मोटी है ।
गोपाल का घर बड़ा है ।
जान और रवि अच्छे लड़के हैं।
किसका कुरता सफेद है ?
सुंदर लड़की कौन है ?
कौन सी किताब मोटी है ?
किसका घर बड़ा है ?
जान और रवि कैसे लड़के हैं ?

Cycle No -5

मैं वकील हूँ ।
हम हिन्तुस्तानी हैं।
वे हिंदी विद्यार्थी हैं।
उनको तमिल मालूम है।
हमारे बच्चे भारत में हैं ।
आप कौन हैं ?
आप लोग कौन हैं ?
वह कौन है ?
क्या उनको तमिल मालूम है ?
आपके बच्चे कहाँ हैं ?

Cycle No -6

मैं मुंबई में रहता हूँ।
मेरी छोटी बहन जयनगर में रहती है।
मेरे दो बडे भाई अमेरिका में रहते हैं ।
वे कहाँ रहते हैं ?
आपकी छोटी बहन कहाँ रहती है?
अमेरिका में कौन कौन रहते हैं ?

Cycle No -7

विद्यार्थी रोज़ स्कूल जाते हैं ।
वे रोज़ खेलते भी हैं ।
लडकियाँ भी रोज़ स्कूल जाती हैं ?
विद्यार्थी रोज़ कहाँ जाते हैं ?
विद्यार्थी कभी कभी स्कूल नहीं जाते ?
क्या वे खेलते नहीं ?
लडकियाँ कहाँ जाती हैं?
विद्यार्थी कब स्कूल नहीं जाते ?

Cycle No -8

मैं आज सुबह घर में था।
कल मेरे पिताजी दिल्ली में थे।
कल रातको तुम्हारी माँ हमारे घर में थी।
सोमवार को लड़कियाँ पार्क में थीं।
आप आज सुबह कहाँ थे?
कल तुम्हारे पिताजी कहाँ थे?
कल रात को तुम्हारी माँ कहाँ थी ?
सोमवार को लडकियाँ कहाँ थीं ?

Cycle No -9

विद्यार्थी कमरे में पढ़ रहे हैं ।
जानकी सुबह गा रही थी।
अध्यापक गणित सिखा रहे हैं ।
कल हम हिन्दी सीख रहे थे।
सरला क्लास में दो तीन गाने गा रही थी।
उसके पास आठ दस हिन्दी किताबें हैं ।
गोपाल और नवीन के पास स्कूटर है।
विद्यार्थी कमरे में क्या कर रहे हैं ?
जानकी सुबह क्या कर रही थी ?
कौन गणित सिखा रहे थे ?
आप कब हिन्दी सीख रहे थे ?
सरला क्लास में कितने गाने गा रही थी ?
उसके पास कितनी हिन्दी किताबें हैं ?
किन किन के पास स्कूटर हैं ?

Cycle No -10

जब आप मेरे घर आये तब मैं लाईब्रेरी में था।
जब वह कमरे में आयी, तब मैं बगीचे में था।
जब रवि सोया तब जगन उठा।
जब जब छुट्टी होती है तब तब लडके खेलते हैं।
राम और रावण में छत्तीस का फरक है।
जब मैं आपके घर आया तब आप कहाँ थे ?
जब रवि सोया तब कौन उठा?
राम और रावण में क्या फरक है?

Cycle No -11

रघु ने रोटी खायी।
गौरी ने चार आम खाये।
मास्टर ने बच्चों को गणित सिखाया।
माँने लडकियों को पढ़ाया।
किसने रोटी खायी?
गौरी ने कितने आम खाये ?
किसने बच्चों को गणित सिखाया ?
माँ ने किनको पढ़ाया ?

Cycle No -12

तुमने दो महीने पहले मुंबई देखा था।
हमने ताजमहल देखा है।
सब विद्यार्थियों ने महात्मा गाँधी का नाम सुना होगा।
सब ने कित्तूर रानी चेन्नम्मा की कहानी सुनी होगी ।
आपने मुंबई कब देखा था ?
ताजमहल किसने देखा है ?
महात्मा गांधीजी का नाम किसने सुना होगा ?
आपने किसकी कहानी पढ़ी होगी ?

Cycle No -13

1. वह रोज़ किताब/ अखबार पढ़ा करती है ।
2. पिताजी रोज़ दौडा करते थे।
3. खिलाड़ी हर दिन खेला करते थे।
4. आप चार लाख में गाड़ी (कार) बेचा करते थे।
5. वह रोज़ क्या पढ़ा करती है ?
6. कौन रोज़ दौड़ा करते थे ?
7. खिलाड़ी हर दिन क्या किया करते थे ?
8. आप कितने में गाड़ी बेचा करते थे ?

Cycle No -14

1. मैं पर्सों हैदराबाद जाऊँगा।
2. हम कल सिनेमा देखेंगे।
3. विद्यार्थिनियाँ शाम को नाचेंगी।
4. मेरी बहन कल चिट्ठी लिखेगी।
5. आप कब हैदराबाद जाएँगे।
6. हम/आप कब सिनेमा देखेंगे ?
7. विद्यार्थिनियाँ शाम को क्या करेंगी ?
8. तुम्हारी बहन कल क्या लिखेगी ?

Cycle No -15

1. अगर बारिश आयेगी तो हम बाहर नहीं जा सकेंगे।
2. अगर तुम कहते तो मैं तुम्हारे घर आता।
3. अगर आज इम्तहान नहीं होता तो मैं तुम्हारे साथ नाटक देखने आता।
4. अगर वह बीमार नहीं पड़ती तो वह दवाखाना नहीं जाती।
5. आप बाहर क्यों नहीं जा सकेंगे ?
6. आज तुम मेरे घर क्यों नहीं आये ?
7. आज तुम मेरे साथ नाटक देखने क्यों नहीं आते ?
8. वह दवाखाना क्यों जाती है ?

Cycle No -16

1. वहाँ जो खड़ा है, वह मेरा भाई है ।
2. जिसे तुमने मैदान में देखा वह जानकी की बहन है।
3. जो जो हिन्दी नहीं जानते वे अंग्रेज़ी में लिखें।
4. जो तुम चाहते हो तो मैं तुम्हारे साथ आऊँगा ।
5. वह कौन है ? जो वहाँ खड़ा है ?
6. जानकी की बहन कौन है ?
7. जो हिन्दी नहीं जानते वे किस भाषा में लिखें ?
8. तुम मेरे साथ आओगे?

Cycle No -17

1. वह खाना खाते खाते कहानी पढ़ता था।
2. गवैये गाते गाते सिर और हाथ हिलाते हैं ।
3. बच्चे कहानी सुनते सुनते सो जाते हैं ।
4. कित्तूर रानी चेम्मा अंग्रेज़ों के खिलाफ लड़ते लड़ते मर गयी।
5. वह कहानी क्या करते करते सुनता था?
6. गवैये गाते गाते क्या क्या हिलाते हैं ?
7. बच्चे क्या सुनते सुनते सो जाते हैं ?
8. अंग्रेज़ों के खिलाफ़ लड़ते लड़ते कौन मर गयी ?

Cycle No -18

1. स्कूल के बाद लड़के अपने अपने घर जाते हैं ।
2. रोज़ सुबह दस बजे मेरे पिताजी अपने दफ्तर में जाते हैं।
3. अब मैं अपना पाठ लिख रहा हूँ।
4. तुम अपनी हिन्दी किताब पढ़ती हो।
5. स्कूल के बाद लड़के कहाँ जाते हैं ?
6. रोज़ सुबह दस बजे तुम्हारे पिताजी कहाँ जाते हैं ?
7. अब तुम क्या लिख रहे हो ?
8. तुम किसकी हिन्दी किताब पढ़ती हो ?

Cycle No -19

1. तुम्हें आज ही बंबई जाना है ।
2. कैलास को दस रुपये लाना होगा /पड़ेगा ।
3. बढ़ई को तीन दिन में दरवाजा बनाना चाहिए ।
4. आपही को बगीचे का काम करना होगा।
5. मुझे कब बंबई जाना होगा ?
6. कैलास को क्या लाना होगा?
7. बढ़ई को कितने दिन में दरवाज़ा बनाना चाहिए ?
8. बगीचे में किसको काम करना होगा?

Cycle No -20

1. मुख्यमंत्री ने कहा कि राजकुमार बहुत अच्छे कलाकार हैं।
2. मास्टर ने कहा कि रमेश बहुत होशियार विद्यार्थी है।
3. पिताजी ने कहा कि '' मैं कल बंबई जाऊँगा ।''
4. नेताओंने कहा कि भगतसिंग बड़े क्रांतिकारी देशभक्त थे।
5. मुख्यमंत्री ने राजकुमार के बारे में क्या कहा?
6. किसने कहा कि रमेश बहुत होशियार विद्यार्थी है?
7. किसने कहा कि कल मैं बंबई जाऊँगा?
8. नेताओं ने भगतसिंग के बारे में क्या कहा?

Cycle No -21

1. मैंने आज पाठ नहीं पढ़ा क्योंकि मुझे बुखार था।
2. लड़के खेलने नहीं गये क्योंकि बारिश हो रही थी।
3. आज से दस दिन तक खेलने नहीं जाऊँगा । क्योंकि मुझे अगले हफ्ते इम्तहान है।
4. चूँकि दाम बहुत ज़्यादा है इसलिए मैं ने सेब नहीं खरीदा।
5. चूँकि वह दानी है, इसलिए सब लोग उन्हें चाहते हैं।
6. तुमने आज पाठ क्यों नहीं पढ़ा ?
7. लड़के खेलने क्यों नहीं गये ?
8. आजसे कितने दिन तुम खेलने नहीं आओगे और क्यों ?
9. तुमने सेब क्यों नहीं खरीदा ?
10. उसे सब लोग क्यों चाहते है ?

Cycle No -22

1. हमारे पास किराये के लिए कई अच्छी गाड़ियाँ हैं।
2. गरमी के लिए वातानुकूल गाड़ियाँ भी कई हैं ।

3. हमारी कंपनी में कई चालक हैं।
4. उनमें से कुछ लोग तो बड़े अनुभवी हैं ।
5. आपके पास किराये के लिए कोई अच्छी गाड़ी है ?
6. गरमी में सफर करने के लिए क्या है ?
7. आपकी कंपनी में अच्छे चालक हैं ?
8. कुछ तजुर्बेदार भी हैं ?

Cycle No -23

1. वह खाना छोड़कर चला गया।
2. बच्चा सीढ़ी से गिर पड़ा।
3. उससे पूछे बिना तुमने उसका कपड़ा ले लिया।
4. वह अंट-संट बोल उठा।
5. लड़के ने दस मिनिट में पाठ पढ़ डाला ।
6. वह कुछ न कुछ गलत काम कर बैठती है।
7. वह क्या छोड़कर चला गया?
8. बच्चा कहाँ से गिर पड़ा?
9. पूछे बिना तुमने (उसका) क्या ले लिया ?
10. वह क्या बोल उठा ?
11. लड़के ने दस मिनिट में क्या पढ़ डाला ?
12. वह क्या कर बैठी ?

Cycle No -24

1. गरमी में स्कूल और कालेजों को छुट्टी होती है ।
2. बरसात के मौसम में बाहर जाना मुश्किल है ।
3. जाड़े में गरम कपड़ों की सख्त ज़रूरत है।
4. हमारे देश में तीन ऋतुएँ हैं ।
5. हमारे देश में स्कूल और कालेजों के लिए कब छुट्टी है?
6. किस मौसम में बाहर जाना मुश्किल है ?
7. कब गरम कपड़ों की ज़रूरत है ?
8. हमारे देश में कितनी ऋतुएँ हैं ?

Cycle No -25

1. हमारा होटेल सस्याहारी है ।
2. यहाँ सिंगल रूम है, डबल रूम है और पारिवारकि गृह हैं ।
3. डबल रूम में सिर्फ दो लोग रह सकते हैं ।
4. अगर एक बच्चा हो तो एक अतिरिक्त बिस्तर लेना होगा।
5. आपका होटेल सस्याहारी है या मांसाहारी ?
6. डबल रूम है ?
7. डबल रूम में कितने लोग रह सकते हैं ?
8. डबल रूम में दो लोग और एक बच्चा रह सकते हैं न ?

Cycle No -26

1. राजस्थान में बहुत गरमी पडती है ।
2. मार्च से जून तक गरमी पडती है ।
3. अक्तूबर से फ़रवरी अंत तक बहुत ठंड पड़ती है ।
4. अमीर गरीबों को सताता है क्यों कि ''जिसकी लाठी उसकी भैंस ''।
5. ठंड में ऊनी कपड़े महँगे पड़ते हैं।
6. किस राज्य में बहुत गरमी पड़ती है ?(हमारे देश में)
7. कब से कब तक हमारे देश में गरमी पड़ती है ?
8. कबसे कब तक ठंड़ पड़ती है ?
9. ऊनी कपड़े कब महँगे होते हैं?
10. अमीर गरीबों को क्यों सताता है ?

Cycle No -27

१. बंबई में रहते समय वह मराठी बोल रहा था।
2. पानी बरसते समय, मैं घर पर ही था।
3. कल घूमते समय मैं मोहन से मिल लूँगा।
4. बंबई में रहते समय वह कौन सी भाषा बोल रहा था ।
5. पानी बरसते समय तुम कहाँ थे ?
6. मोहन से तुम कब मिलोगे ?

Cycle No -28

1. जान आज काम नहीं करता (है)।
2. उसको आज बुखार है ।
3. वह अपना काम अपने दोस्त से कराएगा ।
4. आज अध्यापक ने कहानी लिखवायी।
5. अंधे विद्यार्थी आँखोंवाले विद्यार्थीयोंसे इम्तहान में लिखवाते हैं ।
6. आज कौन काम नहीं करता ?
7. आज किसको बुखार है ?
8. वह अपना काम किससे कराएगा?
9. आज अध्यापक ने क्या लिखाया ?
10. अंधे विद्यार्थी किनसे इम्तहान में लिखवाते हैं ?

Cycle No -29

१. चार लडके मैदान में खेल रहे हैं ।
2. एक लड़की सडक पर जा रही है ।
3. चार लडकों में एक भी लड़का गाना नहीं जानता ।
4. चार लड़कियों में सिर्फ एक लड़की नाचना जानती है ।
5. मैदान में कितने लड़के खेल रहे हैं ?
6. लड़की कहाँ जा रही है ?
7. चार लड़कों में कितने लडके गाना जानते हैं ?
8. चार लड़कियों में कितनी लड़कियाँ नाचना जानती है ?

Cycle No -30

1. मेरा दोस्त सिनेमा देखकर घर गया।
2. विद्यार्थियोंने पाठ लिखकर रेडियो सुना।
3. घर जाकर कपड़ा धोना झाडू देना, और पाठ पढ़ना है ।
4. क्रिकेट खेलकर खिलाडियोंने अगले दिन के लिए अभ्यास किया।
5. तुम्हारा दोस्त सिनेमा देखकर कहाँ गया ?
6. विद्यार्थियोंने पाठ लिखकर क्या सुना ?

7. घर जाकर तुम्हें क्या क्या करना है ?
8. क्रिकेट खेलकर खिलाड़ियों ने क्या किया ?

Cycle No -31

1. दिल लगाकर मेहनत करने से हमारे काम में ज़रूर सफलता मिलेगी।
2. किताबें पढ़ने से ज्ञान बढेगा।
3. कसरत करने से बदन को ताकत मिलेगी ।
4. विद्यार्थी मेहनत करके न पढ़ने से इम्तहान में नापास हो गया।
5. क्या करने से हमारे काम में सफलता मिलेगी ?
6. किताबें पढ़ने से क्या लाभ होगा ?
7. कसरत करने से हमें क्या मिलेगा ?
8. विद्यार्थी क्यों इम्तहान में नापास हो गया ?

Cycle No -32

1. जान आठ-दस दिनों में काम पूरा करेगा।
2. पिछले भूकंप में गुजरात में हज़ारों लोग मर गये।
3. दिल्ली बेंगलूर से करीब डेढ़ हज़ार मील है।
4. आप मेरे लिए एक छाता लायेंगे ?
5. जान कितने दिनों में काम पूरा करेगा ?
6. पिछले साल भूकंप में गुजरात में कितने लोग मर गये?
7. दिल्ली बेंगलूर से करीब कितनी मील दूर है ?
8. मैं आपके लिए क्या लाऊँ ?

Cycle No -33

1. मैं रोज सुबह चार मील सैर करता हूँ।
2. उससे तालाब में तैरा नहीं गया।
3. रोजा से एक दिन में बड़ी किताब पढ़ी नहीं जाती ।

4. मुसाफिरों ने सोचा कि नदी पार करने के लिए क्या किया जाय।
5. आप रोज़ कब सैर करने जाते हैं ?
6. आप रोज़ कितनी दूर सैर करते हैं ?
7. उससे कहाँ तैरा नहीं जाता?
8. रोजा से क्या पढ़ा नहीं जाता ?
9. मुसाफिरों ने क्या सोचा?

Cycle No -34

1. पिताजी के मना करने पर भी लड़का नदी में तैरने गया और डूब गया।
2. मास्टर के कहने पर भी विद्यार्थियोंने खूब नहीं पढ़ा और इम्तहान में अनुत्तीर्ण हो गए ।
3. बार बार कहने पर भी नौजवान सुनते नहीं और शराब पीते हैं।
4. बस में जाते वक्त बस गड्ढे में गिर गया । पर चालक बाल बाल बच गया।
5. पिताजी के मना करने पर भी लड़का कहाँ गया और क्या हुआ?
6. मास्टर के कहने पर भी विद्यार्थीयोंने क्या किया और उसका परिणाम क्या हुआ?
7. बार बार कहने पर भी नौजवान क्या करते हैं ?
8. बस कहाँ गया और चालक को क्या हुआ?

Cycle No -35

1. लडकी पढ़ते पढ़ते सो गयी।
2. तुम्हारा दोस्त खाना खाये बिना चला गया।
3. पढ़ी हुई किताबें पेटी में है।
4. तुम कालेज जाते हुए मेरे घर आओ ।
5. लडकी कब सो गयी?
6. तुम्हारा दोस्त खाना खाकर गया?

7. पेटी में कौन सी किताबें हैं ?
8. तुम कब मेरे घर आओगे?

Cycle No -36

1. कावेरी नदी बड़ी (नदी) है ।
2. गंगा नदी उससे भी बड़ी है ।
3. दुनिया में नैल नदी सबसे बड़ी है ।
4. हिमालय से ऊँचा पहाड़ दूसरा कोई नहीं है।
5. हिन्दुस्तान में कोलकता शहर सबसे बड़ा शहर है।
6. कर्नाटक में कौन सी नदी बड़ी है ?
7. कावेरी से बड़ी नदी भारत में कौनसी है ?
8. दुनिया में सबसे लंबी नदी कौनसी है ?
9. सबसे ऊँचा पहाड़ कौनसा है ?
10. हिमालय से ऊँचा पहाड़ दूसरा कोई है ?

Cycle No -37

1. बड़ों की बात माननी चाहिए
2. जैसे काम करते हैं, वैसे फल मिलता है ।
3. अध्यापक जैसे कहेंगे विद्यार्थी वैसे करेंगे।
4. जैसी करनी वैसी भरनी।
5. किसकी बात माननी चाहिए ?
6. हमको कैसा फल मिलता है ?
7. विद्यार्थियों को किसके कहे अनुसार काम करना होगा?
8. धोखा देने पर क्या खाना पड़ता है ?

Cycle No -38

1. खिलाड़ियों को मैच में जीतने के लिए बहुत मेहनत करनी पड़ती है ।
2. दिल लगाकर काम करने से आदमी(जीवन में) सफल होता है।
3. लड़का फिसल कर गिर गया और पाँव में चोट लगी।
4. नादान लोग आसानी से धोखा खाते हैं।
5. मैच में जीतने के लिए खिलाड़ियों को क्या करना चाहिए?
6. आदमी क्या करने से अपने काम में सफल हो जाता है ?
7. लड़के के पाँव में क्यों चोट लगी ?
8. कौन आसानी से धोखा खाते हैं ?

Cycle No -39

1. भारत के राष्ट्रपति श्रीमती पाटील हैं ।
2. भारत के उपराष्ट्रपति श्री अन्सारी हैं।
3. भारत के प्रधान मंत्री श्री मनमोहन सिंग हैं।
4. भारत के उपप्रधान मंत्री अद्वानीजी थे ।
5. भारत के राष्ट्रपति कौन हैं ?
6. भारत के उपराष्ट्रपति कौन हैं ?
7. भारत के प्रधान मंत्री कौन थे ?
8. भारत के उपप्रधान मंत्री कौन हैं ?

Cycle No -40

1. आज मेरे दोस्त का आना अनिश्चित है।
2. हमारे देश में अब भी बहुत लोग अनपढ़ हैं।
3. बुरे लोग गैरकानूनी काम करते हैं ।
4. घमंडी लोग दूसरों का अपमान करते हैं ।

5. आज तुम्हारा दोस्त क्यों नहीं आता ?
6. अनपढ़ लोग ज़्यादा किस देश में हैं ?
7. गैरकानूनी काम कौन करते हैं ?
8. घमंडी लोग क्या करते हैं ?

Cycle No -41

1. बंबईवाले मराठी (भाषा) बोलते हैं ।
2. गानेवाली महिलाएँ बेंगलूरवाली हैं।
3. छोटीवाली लडकी खूब नाचती है।
4. ठंडावाला पानी दूसरे गिलास में डालो।
5. तेज़वाले लड़के धीमेवाले लडकों से आगे बढ़ते हैं।
6. बंबईवाले कौन सी भाषा बोलते हैं?
7. गानेवाली महिलाएँ कहाँ की हैं ?
8. खूब नाचनेवाली कौन है ?
9. ठंड़ावाला पानी किसमें डालना है?
10. कौन किससे आगे बढते हैं ?

*****

RO-W H SERIE OF

A Text Book prepared exclusively for teaching / learning conversation on matters of day-to day needs.

A Powerful tool in the hands of language teachers as well as learners.

❖ Based on Micro-wave technique, a most scientific &practical method of teaching and learning second languge.

❖ Structurally graded and scientifically designed in graduated sequence text a guide for teachers as well as learners.

❖ Each lesson concentrates on one or two sentence patterns/grammatical structures and dialogues on specific topics.

❖ Teacher's notes based on various socio cultural contexts involve a foreign learner in an Indian environment & enable the learner to learn the expressions and pick up conversation.

❖ Grammatical notes to pinpoint differences between sentence patterns and the corresponding English patterns and structures

❖ Supplements provide dditional exercise for on-going practice.

❖ Use of Roman script with diachritical marks and English language, enable all English knowing people to study the target Language for themselves.

❖ Classified vocabulary list,a note on language phonetics andmany other useful tips are also there.